SHAKESPEARE

RICHARD II

DEIGHTON

Crossroads Public Schoo

14/12/06

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/tragedyofkingric0000will_x0c6

THE TRAGEDY OF

KING RICHARD II.

The Tragedy of
King Richard II.

By

William Shakespeare

WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES BY

K. Deighton

With an Appendix by

T. Cartwright, B.A., B.Sc. (Lond.)

London
Macmillan and Co., Limited
New York: The Macmillan Company
1904

All rights reserved

First Edition 1890.
Reprinted 1893, 1896, 1898, 1901. With Appendix 1903, 1904.

GLASGOW: PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
BY ROBERT MACLEHOSE AND CO. LTD.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Introduction,	vii
King Richard II.,	1
Notes,	89
Index to Notes,	189
Appendix,	193
Glossary,	230

INTRODUCTION.

THOUGH first published in 1597, *Richard the Second* was probably written as early as 1593 or 1594. In the two first issues, that portion of the fourth Act which deals with the deposition of Richard, is not found. In the edition of 1608 it appears with the words on the title page, "With new additions of the Parliament Scene, and the deposing of King Richard." That these new additions belonged to the play as originally constructed seems more than probable from the strong likeness they bear in every respect to the rest of the play; and their omission in the earlier editions, and possibly in the earlier representations, may be accounted for by the subject of deposition being one peculiarly offensive to Elizabeth, whose lieges had in 1596 been exhorted by the Pope to take up arms against her. Whether our play was the one which the accomplices of Essex procured to be acted in February, 1601, in furtherance of the insurrection they had planned, cannot be certainly decided, but the balance of probabilities seems against such a supposition. Date of Composition.

From the actual facts of history Shakespeare has made only one important deviation, that of representing the Queen as fully grown up, though she was in reality only some twelve years old. This deviation was of course Historical Details.

intentional and for dramatic purposes. In other matters he closely follows Holinshed, except that for the same purposes he represents Prince Henry as something older, and Bolingbroke as something younger, than they respectively were. The period with which our play deals is only the last two years of Richard's reign, but a glance at his earlier days will enable us more clearly to understand the circumstances which led to his downfall. Though Richard ascended the throne in 1377 —being then only eleven years old—it was not till 1389 that he began to govern in reality. The intervening years had been troublous times in many ways. The French had harassed the southern coasts of England, and afterwards landed a force in Scotland to co-operate with the Scotch; Lollardism was making itself widely and acutely felt; the miserable condition of the lower classes of society culminated in a peasant revolt; and for a time, through the instrumentality of his uncle, the Duke of Gloucester, Richard was deprived of all power by the appointment of a commission of regency. Asserting himself at last, he dismissed his Council; and for the next eight years ruled wisely and successfully. Peace was made with France; Ireland was quieted; the Lollard troubles died out; and the authority of Parliament was respected. But Richard had never forgotten the treatment he had suffered at the hands of his uncle and the associate Lords. With the help of Parliament, he was at length enabled to wreak his vengeance upon them; and, free from their opposition, he next determined to free himself of Parliamentary control. With this object he procured the appointment by Parliament of a Committee empowered "to continue their sittings after its dissolution, and to 'examine and determine all matters and

subjects which had been moved in the presence of the King, with all the dependences of those not determined.' The aim of Richard was to supersede by means of this permanent commission the body from which it originated: he at once employed it to determine causes and carry out his will, and forced from every tenant of the Crown an oath to recognize the validity of its acts, and to oppose any attempts to alter or revoke them. With such an engine at his command the King was absolute, and with the appearance of absolutism the temper of his reign suddenly changed. A system of forced loans, the sale of charters of pardon to Gloucester's adherents, the outlawry of seven counties at once on the plea that they had supported his enemies and must purchase pardon, a reckless interference with the course of justice, roused into new life the social and political discontent which was threatening the very existence of the Crown."* Such was the condition of things when Richard availed himself of a quarrel between the Dukes of Hereford and Norfolk to banish both of them from the realm. The former, though of late seemingly taken into favour, being one of the Lords who had held the King in such harsh control, and from his popularity with the nation, a powerful rival; the latter being dangerous in consequence of his privity to the murder of Gloucester, which Richard was more than suspected of having authorized.

Outline of the Play.

It is at this point that our play opens. The quarrel between the two Dukes had its origin in a conversation in which Norfolk confided to Hereford his suspicions of the King's intentions towards them both. This conversation being imparted by Hereford to the King, the Dukes were cited before the Commissioners already

* Green's *Short History of the English People*, p. 262.

mentioned for an investigation of the matter. In Shakespeare's play they are represented as appearing in the first instance before the King, with whom are John of Gaunt, the father of Hereford, and other nobles; and the charges brought by Hereford have nothing to do with the reported conversation, but impute to Norfolk embezzlement of moneys entrusted to him for the payment of troops, instigation of all the treasons of the past eighteen years, and, above all, the murder of Gloucester. Norfolk meets these charges with absolute denial, and declares his eagerness to accept the combat which Bolingbroke had offered in substantiation of his words. Richard attempts reconcilement, and affects to forbid this appeal to arms; but in the end allows it, and fixes the time and place for its decision. Possibly his hope is that both may perish in the encounter; but in spite of his high-sounding words, his weakness of character can suggest nothing more efficacious than procrastination. The second scene shows us John of Gaunt in conversation with Gloucester's widowed Duchess. Her object is to stir him up to vengeance upon Norfolk for his brother's death. Gaunt, however, aware that that Duke, if guilty, was only the agent of Richard's purposes, either knows himself powerless to bring the real offender to justice, or honestly feels that it is not for a subject to compass his sovereign's death. "God's is the quarrel," he says,

> "for God's substitute,
> His deputy anointed in his sight,
> Hath caused his death; the which, if wrongfully,
> Let Heaven revenge, for I may never lift
> An angry arm against his minister."

They therefore separate; the Duchess retiring to her

seat at Plashy, Gaunt setting out for Coventry, where the combat between Norfolk and Hereford is to take place. Here the lists are prepared, the appellant and defendant present themselves ready armed, each pledges himself to the justice of his cause, and the trumpets sound for the combat to begin. At this moment Richard throws down his warder to stay proceedings. Retiring awhile with his council, he returns to announce the decision at which they had arrived—a decision that both Bolingbroke and Mowbray shall be banished from England; the former for ten years, the latter for life. This solution of his difficulty Richard had doubtless evolved in the interval he had given himself for the exercise of his kingcraft when fixing the date for the combat, though he, of course, represents it as the result of the Council's deliberations. Afraid to take any resolute measures, hampered on the one side by Bolingbroke's influence with the people, and on the other by Mowbray's knowledge of his guilty secret, he as usual resorts to procrastination, and fancies that he has cleverly extricated himself from the danger of pronouncing capital sentence upon either party. Bolingbroke affects to accept the verdict with loyal submission; though he doubtless does so knowing that the moment has not yet come for the realization of the ambitious hopes he cherishes. Norfolk, on the other hand, vigorously protests against the severity of his doom; though beyond the words

> "A dearer merit, not so deep a maim
> As to be cast forth in the common air,
> Have I deserved at your highness' hands,"

—words whose significance Richard must have keenly

felt—he does not attempt to shield himself from condemnation by implicating the King in the guilt of Gloucester's murder. Richard, however, not satisfied as to the efficacy of mere banishment, calls upon the two Dukes to take an oath that they never shall

> "Embrace each other's love in banishment;
> Nor never look upon each other's face;
> Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile
> This lowering tempest of your home-bred hate;
> Nor never by advised purpose meet,
> To plot, contrive or complot any ill
> 'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land."

This precious assurance being obtained, this covenant drawn up as though between parties to some action at law, Richard conscious of the danger he may be provoking by too great rigour towards the powerful house of Lancaster, reduces Bolingbroke's term of banishment by four years. Equally incapable of real vigour and real justice, he can only temporize, with a vague hope that circumstances may occur to give him a security which he cannot conquer for himself. The Scene closes with a pathetic, but vain, attempt on Gaunt's part to reconcile his son to the misery of exile. A load is now lifted from Richard's mind, though he shows in the next Scene how anxious he is as to the regard in which Bolingbroke is held by the common people, and as to the designs he may mature in his exile. He has, however, gone, and for the immediate present Richard feels himself secure. The matter now pressing most urgently upon his attention is the subjugation of the Irish rebels; and, as his coffers are pretty well exhausted, he does not hesitate to replenish them by farming out the revenues of England, and, if need be, by raising forced loans. He also medi-

tates the seizure of Gaunt's estates so soon as he shall die, and prays that God may put it

> "in his physician's mind
> To help him to his grave immediately."

This pious prayer is quickly followed by a summons to the death-bed of Gaunt, who, now careless of earthly consequences, soundly rates his King upon his various acts of misgovernment. For a while Richard listens with outward patience to the scathing words, but at length his passionate anger flames out, and he tells Gaunt,

> "Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,
> This tongue, that runs so soundly in thy head,
> Should run thy head from thy unreverent shoulders."

But Gaunt is beyond fear. Boldly accusing Richard of Gloucester's death, and challenging him to wreak like vengence upon himself, he is borne out in a dying state; Northumberland entering immediately afterwards to report that all is over. Richard greets the announcement with the words,

> "The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he:
> His time is spent; our pilgrimage must be";

and as if he has done all that is necessary for the occasion by giving expression to a sentimental commonplace, recklessly follows up the determination he had proclaimed by seizing to himself

> "The plate, coin, revenues, and moveables
> Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd."

It is in vain that York, himself a man of no stern moral fibre, eloquently denounces such an act. His appeal is not merely to considerations of honour and justice, but to considerations much more likely to touch Richard,

considerations of policy and self-love; and when the headstrong monarch treats his remonstrance with contempt, he quits the scene rather than be a party to such iniquity. His opposition and temporary defection are matters of no great concern, and Richard appears to know that it will be easy enough to bring him round again. But it is a very different thing to have exasperated beyond all hope of reconciliation the powerful lords who, with Northumberland at their head, are already intriguing for Bolingbroke's return, and now, binding themselves to active measures, set out to meet him at Ravenspurg. The Scene is followed by one in which the Queen, bewailing her husband's absence in Ireland, is greeted with the news that Bolingbroke having landed, has been joined by Northumberland and the associate lords. York, to whom the government of the country has been delegated, prepares to assert the King's supremacy. But he is weighed down by his knowledge of the hatred in which Richard is held alike by peer and commoner, and also by the feeling that on whichever side he ranges himself it is against a kinsman. We now come to Bolingbroke's march to meet York. Accompanied by Northumberland, and with their combined forces rapidly swelling, he is joined on the road by Northumberland's son, Harry Percy, and presently by Ross and Willoughby also. These lords have scarcely been welcomed when Berkly, deputed by York to challenge Bolingbroke's progress, appears on the scene, and is quickly followed by York himself. Putting on a show of determination, York sternly rebukes his nephew's audacity, and brands him as rebel and traitor to his sovereign lord. Bolingbroke's answer is to claim the rights, legally his, while Northumberland takes upon himself to assert that it is for nothing beyond these rights

that Bolingbroke has come. York, seeing that words are vain, and knowing that deeds are beyond him with such forces as are at his command, agrees to stand neuter between the opposing parties, and is compelled by the insurgents to accompany them to Bristol Castle. One of Richard's supports has therefore now given way. Another is shortly to fail him. Salisbury, sent over from Ireland, has collected a strong force of Welshmen in his King's defence, and but for Richard's lingering in Ireland, things might even yet turn in his favour. But with his fatal irresolution he delays for nearly a fortnight longer, and the Welshmen weary of waiting, and finding that nearly the whole of England has espoused Bolingbroke's cause, at last disband themselves and go over to Bolingbroke. Even the troops brought back from Ireland quickly begin to melt away, and Richard in a few days stands bare of all support. It is at this point that the second Act closes. With the beginning of the third Act, Bolingbroke asserts the power which he now knows to be securely his by ordering the death of two of Richard's chief favourites, Bushy and Green, on whom he casts the blame of having led the King to his ruin; and we then pass to Richard's arrival at Barkloughly Castle. In an outburst of exaggerated sentiment, he adjures his native earth, that land for which he had thought no burdens too heavy, to refuse all sustenance to his foes:

> "Feed not thy sovereign's foes, my gentle earth,
> Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense;
> But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,
> And heavy-gaited toads, lie in their way,
> Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet,
> Which with usurping steps do trample thee.
> Yield stinging nettles to mine enemies;

And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,
Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder,
Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch
Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies."

To this the practical Bishop of Carlisle makes answer in effect that sentiment however graceful in its form is out of place now, that if they would recover lost ground they must be up and doing,—a truth which Aumerle further enforces in words that Richard cannot misunderstand. Richard, however, sees only another opportunity for declamation. His theme is the divinity that doth hedge a king: the sun of majesty will arise and disperse the gloomy mists of misfortune; Bolingbroke may be upheld by any number of mere men, but angels will fight in behalf of "the deputy elected by the Lord." His heroics are interrupted by the entrance of Salisbury to announce that one day's delay has cost the king the support of the Welsh musters. The brave words just uttered die out from his lips; the material agency he a moment ago affected to despise is recognized at its full value; and despair takes the place of vapouring confidence. Aumerle endeavours to put heart into him, and for a short instant he recovers his boastful attitude. But though affecting to place his trust in the name of king, it is upon the forces he supposes to be with York that he really relies. Scroop now enters preluding further bad news, and Richard proclaims his fortitude against all evils that may be awaiting him. The tale, however, of Bolingbroke's triumphal progress provokes an outburst of wrath at the treachery to his cause which he assumes his favourites, those "snakes, in my heart-blood warmed," to have shown. Assured that they have paid with their lives the penalty of their adher-

ence, Richard moralizes the situation "into a thousand similes," his text being the vanity of kingly pomp. He is a second time reproached by the Bishop's practical wisdom, and a second time regains a momentary courage. But Scroop has more calamity to announce, the defection, to wit, of York. All hope is now past, and Richard's consciousness of this fact is recognized in a petulant rebuke to Aumerle for having tried to comfort him:

> "Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me forth
> Of that sweet way I was into despair!
> What say you now? what comfort have we now?
> By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly
> That bids me be of comfort any more."

From this alternation of braggart words and unmanly prostration, we pass to Bolingbroke's effective action. With Northumberland, York, and others, he is before Flint Castle, Richard's last retreat. By Northumberland he sends word that if his banishment is repealed and his estates restored, he is ready to make complete submission to the king; if not, he will use the power that circumstances have given into his hands. The messenger is received with a speech of no little dignity, though with threats of consequences which Richard knows he is impotent to put in force. Delivering his message, Northumberland personally pledges himself that Bolingbroke aims at nothing further than his legal rights. These are at once conceded, and Bolingbroke's envoy bears back the intelligence. Richard, on his departure, so far from maintaining the show of confidence with which he had greeted Northumberland, bemoans the necessity of having to use fair words towards one on whom he had so lately "laid the

sentence of dread punishment"; and on hearing of Northumberland's return prepares himself for a spontaneous surrender of his crown, decking out his intention in a parade of fanciful humility and resignation. Bolingbroke has sent to desire a conference; and at their meeting, Richard, unsolicited, yields himself into his rival's hands to be disposed of as it may seem fit to him. Without disclosing his final intentions, Bolingbroke accepts Richard's offer to accompany him to London, and the Scene then closes. The next Scene is in the Duke of York's garden at Langley, where the Queen and her attendants overhear a conversation between the gardener and his servants. The first servant, bidden to busy himself with his duties, demurs to the necessity of maintaining "law, form, and due proportion" in their petty world, while the great world around them, the realm of England, is allowed to run into such riotous disorder. The gardener rebukes him, showing how, for want of timely control of the plants under his care, the gardener of England has brought ruin upon himself:

> "We at time of year
> Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit-trees,
> Lest, being over-proud in sap and blood,
> With too much riches it confound itself:
> Had he done so to great and growing men,
> They might have lived to bear, and he to taste
> Their fruits of duty. Superfluous branches
> We lop away, that bearing boughs may live:
> Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,
> Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down."

The Queen, coming forward, bitterly attacks the gardener for daring to imagine such a thing as her husband's

downfall; but finding that his information is only too accurate, at once prepares to join the King in London. The opening Scene of the Fourth Act, in which Aumerle is charged by Bagot with Gloucester's death,—an accusation substantiated by Fitzwater and another Lord,—serves two purposes. By making it appear that Richard had instigated the murder, an additional reason is given for depriving him of his crown; while the importance thus attached to Aumerle's subsequent plot against Bolingbroke furnishes a fresh pretext for taking the life of a master served by such dangerous instruments. The question of Aumerle's guilt is left to be decided by the issue of the combat to which he has challenged his accusers; and at this point York enters to announce Richard's resignation, and salutes Bolingbroke as King. Against his acceptance of the throne a vigorous protest is made by the sturdy Bishop of Carlisle, who forcibly predicts the woes that shall arise from the usurpation,—but with no other result than his arrest for capital treason. Bolingbroke now gives orders for Richard to be brought before him in order that

> "in common view
> He may surrender: so we shall proceed
> Without suspicion."

Richard enters, and after a good deal of self-compassion and characteristic trifling, accepts his fate, Bolingbroke then giving orders for his own coronation on the following Wednesday. Richard's progress to the Tower opens the fifth Act, the Queen waiting on the road to meet him. Their interview is interrupted by the entrance of Northumberland, who informs Richard that Bolingbroke has changed the place of his confinement to Pomfret

Castle, while his Queen is to be sent back to France. Richard, in a speech of much dignity, foretells Northumberland's revolt from Bolingbroke,—a prediction speedily to be verified,—and after a tender farewell, the King and Queen are separated. Two Scenes are next taken up with the discovery of a plot against Bolingbroke, in which Aumerle is concerned; the Duke of York, his father, urging condign and speedy punishment, the Duchess pleading with vociferous energy for her son's pardon. For the father's loyalty the son is forgiven, and Aumerle's further life justifies the clemency shown him, he perishing bravely in the van at Agincourt. Whether the discovery of this plot only sharpens Bolingbroke's apprehension of the danger in his path so long as Richard is allowed to live, the danger of leaving a rallying point for discontented spirits, or whether it had all along been determined to get rid of him, we have in the next Scene Sir Pierce of Exton openly declaring Bolingbroke's desire for Richard's death, in almost the words with which Henry the Second prompted the murder of Becket, and John tempted Hubert to make away with Arthur. But we are to see Richard once again, to see him in his dungeon at Pomfret Castle. And here, though with the dark shadow of death closely hovering round, we find him as much in love as ever with trivialities and phantoms. Torturing his ingenuity to hammer out appropriate similes, gratifying his imagination with fanciful analogies, solacing himself by putting together intricate word-puzzles, he seems to regard life as nothing more serious than a fantastic dream. Strenuous sorrow, poignant regret, deep-seated hatred, are emotions of which his flabby soul is incapable. For the faithful groom who seeks him out in his captivity, he is ready with a playful jest; with

him he can talk about a favourite horse, petulantly complaining of its disloyalty in having submitted to Bolingbroke as a rider, and finding in the incident material for the luxury of self-reproach. But his end is at hand. Exton, bent on purchasing Bolingbroke's good-will, enters with his murderous agents. Their assault upon his person calls up Richard's spirit; two of his assailants he kills before Exton's sword can lay him low, and his death at all events is not ignoble. Exton, though struck with remorse at his own deed, causes the coffined body to be borne into Bolingbroke's presence; but for all reward is met by the sternly contemptuous greeting,

> "though I did wish him dead,
> I hate the murderer, love him murdered.
> The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,
> But neither my good word, nor princely favour:
> With Cain go wander through the shades of night,
> And never show thy head by day or light."

Richard, then, is shown to us as a king without any of the kingly attributes, except that of a factitious dignity; as a man without any manly qualities, except those of an affectionate heart and a fair share of personal courage. Curbed and checked in his earlier days by forces too strong to struggle against, he has not been disciplined into firmness of determination; surrounded by difficulties and intrigue, he has learned nothing of political prudence. His foresight consists in blinding his eyes to what is coming; his wisdom is to procrastinate in the hope that something miraculously advantageous may fight upon his side. Amidst a throng of turbulent nobles he knows not how to bind to himself any serviceable ally; but leaning with weak affection upon any parasite who has a soothing tale for his ear, he contrives

to alienate one by one those supports which might have given stability to his power. All the vices that Malcolm in his conversation with Macduff ascribes to himself might have been "portable, with other graces weigh'd"; his insincerity, born with him, his arbitrariness, to some extent the result of circumstances, need not have cost him his crown if counterbalanced by strength of purpose, keenness of vision, and promptitude of hand. Greater tyrants have held undisturbed sway; far worse monsters have died in their beds. But such folly, such vacillation, such blindness as his are incompatible with the retention of power. Taught by bitter experience that his favouritism has estranged those who were naturally his strength; with the memory of the smouldering elements of disaffection that had already burst forth in the earlier days of his reign; fresh from an act of tyranny in the banishment of Norfolk and Bolingbroke; he has the folly to leave England in order to quell a rising in Ireland, and the more incredible folly to provoke to open wrath the whole nobility of the kingdom by his confiscation of Bolingbroke's estates. If near relationship was no hindrance to an act of such violence, what check could there be in the case of those who boasted no such tie? If the powerful house of Lancaster was not safe from depredation, who that was worth the plundering could hope to escape? Still, even this piece of madness was scarcely more damning to his cause than the vacillation which hindered his return from Ireland. Swift measures might have repressed the rebellion, for a time at all events; a stern assertion of that kingly might he was so ready to brag about would have struck awe into all who hesitated. Days, however, are of no account with Richard; action is a thing as painful to him as

stately words are pleasant. Providence will extricate him from the slough into which he has fallen, and human prudence is but a poor thing. Great calamities may paralyse the firmest minds, but Richard's faculties are not paralysed, for they have not stubbornness and consistency to suffer such shock. His courage merely dissolves, liquefies, evaporates in wordy laments and graceful trivialities; his mind postures and attitudinizes on its road to extinction. In strange contrast to this jelly-fish organization is the "firm-set earth" of Bolingbroke's temperament. Earthy in his aspirations, with nothing very exalted, nothing very lovable, about him; he still knows what he wants, knows how his desires are to be attained, and goes straightforward to his point. He can wait, he can flatter, can use dissimulation; but his waiting is not dilatoriness, in his flattery he does not descend to unworthy familiarity, under his dissimulation he masks his designs, yet cloaks no treachery. He has come to seek his own; and if, in the process, events indicate that he may indulge in a more extended ambition, he is ready to be guided by events. The deposition of Richard is as much forced upon him as sought by him, and every step he takes is taken with deliberate, well-planned, advance. Towards the confederate lords he is gracious without enthusiasm; a courageous opponent, like the Bishop of Carlisle, he punishes with rigour and yet with politic generosity; for a weak and fallen foe, like Richard, he has a feeling of pity, contemptuous as that pity may be. Self-contained and self-assured, he has no need to be vindictive or petty. Of his country's wrongs and sufferings he has as clear a perception as of his own wrongs and sufferings; and if his first dictates are those of selfishness, it is an enlightened selfishness

which sees that self alone cannot be safely gratified. To be really powerful himself, he knows that he must make his country powerful and prosperous, so far as good government can effect that end. To ensure permanence to his rule, it is essential that tranquillity and justice should prevail throughout the land. His government of England, however, is outside the scope of the present play, and Shakespeare's delineation of his character is necessarily incomplete. Fully to comprehend that character, and with it the course of events that Richard's reign initiates, *Richard the Second* must be read in connection with *Henry the Fourth* and *Henry the Fifth*. The first play, depicting the remedy of force, the attempt by usurpation to set right the time that is out of joint, foreshadows the intestine troubles which *Henry the Fourth* shows us in full operation, while in *Henry the Fifth* the King is still haunted by the dread of heavenly retribution upon the crime of his father by which he himself still profits, and by his invasion of France endeavours to engage the attention of his countrymen and avert their eyes from a too close scrutiny into the tenure by which he holds the crown. In my Introduction to *Henry the Fifth* I have endeavoured to set out more fully the sequence of events in the three plays, and to this I may perhaps be allowed to refer my readers.

THE TRAGEDY OF

KING RICHARD II.

DRAMATIS PERSONÆ.

KING RICHARD the Second.
JOHN OF GAUNT, Duke of Lancaster, } uncles to the King.
EDMUND OF LANGLEY, Duke of York, }
HENRY, surnamed BOLINGBROKE, Duke of Hereford, son to John of Gaunt; afterwards KING HENRY IV.
DUKE OF AUMERLE, son to the Duke of York.
THOMAS MOWBRAY, Duke of Norfolk.
DUKE OF SURREY.
EARL OF SALISBURY.
LORD BERKELEY.
BUSHY, } servants to King Richard.
BAGOT, }
GREEN, }
EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND.
HENRY PERCY, surnamed Hotspur, his son.
LORD ROSS.
LORD WILLOUGHBY.
LORD FITZWATER.
Bishop of Carlisle.
Abbot of Westminster.
Lord Marshal.
SIR STEPHEN SCROOP.
SIR PIERCE of Exton.
Captain of a band of Welshmen.

QUEEN to King Richard.
DUCHESS OF YORK.
DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER.
Lady attending on the Queen.

Lords, Heralds, Officers, Soldiers, two Gardeners, Keeper, Messenger, Groom, and other Attendants.

SCENE: *England and Wales.*

THE TRAGEDY OF

KING RICHARD II.

ACT I.

Scene I. *London.* King Richard's *palace.*

Enter King Richard, John of Gaunt, *with other* Nobles *and* Attendants.

K. Rich. Old John of Gaunt, time-honour'd Lancaster,
Hast thou, according to thy oath and band,
Brought hither Henry Hereford thy bold son,
Here to make good the boisterous late appeal,
Which then our leisure would not let us hear,
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?
Gaunt. I have, my liege.
K. Rich. Tell me, moreover, hast thou sounded him,
If he appeal the duke on ancient malice;
Or worthily, as a good subject should, 10
On some known ground of treachery in him?
Gaunt. As near as I could sift him on that argument,
On some apparent danger seen in him
Aim'd at your highness, no inveterate malice.
K. Rich. Then call them to our presence; face to face,
And frowning brow to brow, ourselves will hear
The accuser and the accused freely speak:

High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire.

Enter BOLINGBROKE *and* MOWBRAY.

Boling. Many years of happy days befal 20
My gracious sovereign, my most loving liege!
Mow. Each day still better other's happiness;
Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,
Add an immortal title to your crown!
K. Rich. We thank you both: yet one but flatters us
As well appeareth by the cause you come;
Namely, to appeal each other of high treason.
Cousin of Hereford, what dost thou object
Against the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray?
Boling. First, heaven be the record to my speech! 30
In the devotion of a subject's love,
Tendering the precious safety of my prince,
And free from other misbegotten hate,
Come I appellant to this princely presence.
Now, Thomas Mowbray, do I turn to thee,
And mark my greeting well; for what I speak
My body shall make good upon this earth,
Or my divine soul answer it in heaven.
Thou art a traitor and a miscreant,
Too good to be so and too bad to live, 40
Since the more fair and crystal is the sky,
The uglier seem the clouds that in it fly.
Once more, the more to aggravate the note,
With a foul traitor's name stuff I thy throat;
And wish, so please my sovereign, ere I move,
What my tongue speaks my right drawn sword may prove.
Mow. Let not my cold words here accuse my zeal:
'Tis not the trial of a woman's war,
The bitter clamour of two eager tongues,
Can arbitrate this cause betwixt us twain; 50
The blood is hot that must be cool'd for this:

Yet can I not of such tame patience boast
As to be hush'd and nought at all to say :
First, the fair reverence of your highness curbs me
From giving reins and spurs to my free speech ;
Which else would post until it had return'd
These terms of treason doubled down his throat.
Setting aside his high blood's royalty,
And let him be no kinsman to my liege,
I do defy him, and I spit at him ; 60
Call him a slanderous coward and a villain :
Which to maintain I would allow him odds,
And meet him, were I tied to run afoot
Even to the frozen ridges of the Alps,
Or any other ground inhabitable,
Where ever Englishman durst set his foot.
Mean time let this defend my loyalty,
By all my hopes, most falsely doth he lie.

Boling. Pale trembling coward, there I throw my gage,
Disclaiming here the kindred of the king, 70
And lay aside my high blood's royalty,
Which fear, not reverence, makes thee to except.
If guilty dread have left thee so much strength
As to take up mine honour's pawn, then stoop :
By that and all the rites of knighthood else,
Will I make good against thee, arm to arm,
What I have spoke, or thou canst worse devise.

Mow. I take it up ; and by that sword I swear,
Which gently laid my knighthood on my shoulder,
I'll answer thee in any fair degree, 80
Or chivalrous design of knightly trial :
And when I mount, alive may I not light,
If I be traitor or unjustly fight !

K. Rich. What doth our cousin lay to Mowbray's charge ?
It must be great that can inherit us
So much as of a thought of ill in him.

Boling. Look, what I speak, my life shall prove it true ;

That Mowbray hath received eight thousand nobles
In name of lendings for your highness' soldiers,
The which he hath detain'd for lewd employments, 90
Like a false traitor and injurious villain.
Besides I say and will in battle prove,
Or here or elsewhere to the furthest verge
That ever was survey'd by English eye,
That all the treasons for these eighteen years
Complotted and contrived in this land
Fetch from false Mowbray their first head and spring.
Further I say and further will maintain
Upon his bad life to make all this good,
That he did plot the Duke of Gloucester's death, 100
Suggest his soon-believing adversaries,
And consequently, like a traitor coward,
Sluiced out his innocent soul through streams of blood :
Which blood, like sacrificing Abel's, cries,
Even from the tongueless caverns of the earth,
To me for justice and rough chastisement ;
And, by the glorious worth of my descent,
This arm shall do it, or this life be spent.

K. Rich. How high a pitch his resolution soars !
Thomas of Norfolk, what say'st thou to this ? 110

Mow. O, let my sovereign turn away his face
And bid his ears a little while be deaf,
Till I have told this slander of his blood,
How God and good men hate so foul a liar.

K. Rich. Mowbray, impartial are our eyes and ears :
Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir,
As he is but my father's brother's son,
Now, by my sceptre's awe, I make a vow,
Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood
Should nothing privilege him, nor partialize 120
The unstooping firmness of my upright soul :
He is our subject, Mowbray ; so art thou :
Free speech and fearless I to thee allow.

Mow. Then, Bolingbroke, as low as to thy heart,
Through the false passage of thy throat, thou liest.
Three parts of that receipt I had for Calais
Disbursed I duly to his highness' soldiers ;
The other part reserved I by consent,
For that my sovereign liege was in my debt
Upon remainder of a dear account, 130
Since last I went to France to fetch his queen :
Now swallow down that lie. For Gloucester's death,
I slew him not ; but to my own disgrace
Neglected my sworn duty in that case.
For you, my noble Lord of Lancaster,
The honourable father to my foe,
Once did I lay an ambush for your life,
A trespass that doth vex my grieved soul ;
But ere I last received the sacrament
I did confess it, and exactly begg'd 140
Your grace's pardon, and I hope I had it.
This is my fault : as for the rest appeal'd,
It issues from the rancour of a villain,
A recreant and most degenerate traitor :
Which in myself I boldly will defend ;
And interchangeably hurl down my gage
Upon this overweening traitor's foot,
To prove myself a loyal gentleman
Even in the best blood chamber'd in his bosom.
In haste whereof, most heartily I pray 150
Your highness to assign our trial day.

K. Rich. Wrath-kindled gentlemen, be ruled by me ;
Let's purge this choler without letting blood :
This we prescribe, though no physician ;
Deep malice makes too deep incision ;
Forget, forgive ; conclude and be agreed ;
Our doctors say this is no month to bleed.
Good uncle, let this end where it begun ;
We'll calm the Duke of Norfolk, you your son.

Gaunt. To be a make-peace shall become my age : 160
Throw down, my son, the Duke of Norfolk's gage.
K. Rich. And, Norfolk, throw down his.
Gaunt. When, Harry, when ?
Obedience bids I should not bid again.
K. Rich. Norfolk, throw down, we bid ; there is no boot.
Mow. Myself I throw, dread sovereign, at thy foot.
My life thou shalt command, but not my shame :
The one my duty owes ; but my fair name,
Despite of death that lives upon my grave,
To dark dishonour's use thou shalt not have.
I am disgraced, impeach'd and baffled here, 170
Pierced to the soul with slander's venom'd spear,
The which no balm can cure but his heart-blood
Which breathed this poison.
K. Rich. Rage must be withstood :
Give me his gage : lions make leopards tame.
Mow. Yea, but not change his spots : take but my shame,
And I resign my gage. My dear dear lord,
The purest treasure mortal times afford
Is spotless reputation : that away,
Men are but gilded loam or painted clay
A jewel in a ten-times-barr'd-up chest 180
Is a bold spirit in a loyal breast.
Mine honour is my life ; both grow in one ;
Take honour from me, and my life is done :
Then, dear my liege, mine honour let me try ;
In that I live and for that will I die.
K. Rich. Cousin, throw up your gage ; do you begin.
Boling. O, God defend my soul from such deep sin !
Shall I seem crest-fall'n in my father's sight ?
Or with pale beggar-fear impeach my height
Before this out-dared dastard ? Ere my tongue 190
Shall wound my honour with such feeble wrong,
Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear
The slavish motive of recanting fear,

And spit it bleeding in his high disgrace,
Where shame doth harbour, even in Mowbray's face.
[*Exit Gaunt.*

K. Rich. We were not born to sue, but to command ;
Which since we cannot do to make you friends,
Be ready, as your lives shall answer it,
At Coventry, upon Saint Lambert's day :
There shall your swords and lances arbitrate 200
The swelling difference of your settled hate :
Since we can not atone you, we shall see
Justice design the victor's chivalry.
Lord marshal, command our officers at arms
Be ready to direct these home alarms. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The* DUKE OF LANCASTER'S *palace.*

Enter JOHN OF GAUNT *with the* DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER.

Gaunt. Alas, the part I had in Woodstock's blood
Doth more solicit me than your exclaims,
To stir against the butchers of his life !
But since correction lieth in those hands
Which made the fault that we cannot correct,
Put we our quarrel to the will of heaven ;
Who, when they see the hours ripe on earth,
Will rain hot vengeance on offenders' heads.

Duch. Finds brotherhood in thee no sharper spur ?
Hath love in thy old blood no living fire ? 10
Edward's seven sons, whereof thyself art one,
Were as seven vials of his sacred blood,
Or seven fair branches springing from one root :
Some of those seven are dried by nature's course,
Some of those branches by the Destinies cut ;
But Thomas, my dear lord, my life, my Gloucester,
One vial full of Edward's sacred blood,
One flourishing branch of his most royal root,

Is crack'd, and all the precious liquor spilt,
Is hack'd down, and his summer leaves all faded, 20
By envy's hand and murder's bloody axe.
Ah, Gaunt, his blood was thine! that bed, that womb,
That metal, that self mould, that fashion'd thee
Made him a man; and though thou livest and breathest,
Yet art thou slain in him: thou dost consent
In some large measure to thy father's death,
In that thou seest thy wretched brother die,
Who was the model of thy father's life.
Call it not patience, Gaunt; it is despair:
In suffering thus thy brother to be slaughter'd, 30
Thou showest the naked pathway to thy life,
Teaching stern murder how to butcher thee:
That which in mean men we intitle patience
Is pale cold cowardice in noble breasts.
What shall I say? to safeguard thine own life,
The best way is to venge my Gloucester's death.

Gaunt. God's is the quarrel; for God's substitute,
His deputy anointed in His sight,
Hath caused his death: the which if wrongfully,
Let heaven revenge; for I may never lift 40
An angry arm against His minister.

Duch. Where then, alas, may I complain myself?

Gaunt. To God, the widow's champion and defence.

Duch. Why, then, I will. Farewell, old Gaunt.
Thou goest to Coventry, there to behold
Our cousin Hereford and fell Mowbray fight:
O, sit my husband's wrongs on Hereford's spear,
That it may enter butcher Mowbray's breast!
Or, if misfortune miss the first career,
Be Mowbray's sins so heavy in his bosom, 50
That they may break his foaming courser's back,
And throw the rider headlong in the lists,
A caitiff recreant to my cousin Hereford!
Farewell, old Gaunt: thy sometimes brother's wife

With her companion grief must end her life.
Gaunt. Sister, farewell ; I must to Coventry :
As much good stay with thee as go with me !
Duch. Yet one word more : grief boundeth where it falls,
Not with the empty hollowness, but weight :
I take my leave before I have begun, 60
For sorrow ends not when it seemeth done.
Commend me to thy brother, Edmund York.
Lo, this is all :—nay, yet depart not so ;
Though this be all, do not so quickly go ;
I shall remember more. Bid him—ah, what ?—
With all good speed at Plashy visit me.
Alack, and what shall good old York there see
But empty lodgings and unfurnish'd walls,
Unpeopled offices, untrodden stones ?
And what hear there for welcome but my groans ? 70
Therefore commend me ; let him not come there
To seek out sorrow that dwells every where.
Desolate, desolate, will I hence and die :
The last leave of thee takes my weeping eye. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *The lists at Coventry.*

Enter the Lord Marshal *and the* DUKE OF AUMERLE.

Mar. My Lord Aumerle, is Harry Hereford arm'd ?
Aum. Yea, at all points ; and longs to enter in.
Mar. The Duke of Norfolk, sprightfully and bold,
Stays but the summons of the appellant's trumpet.
Aum. Why, then, the champions are prepared, and stay
For nothing but his majesty's approach.

The trumpets sound, and the KING *enters with his nobles,* GAUNT, BUSHY, BAGOT, GREEN, *and others. When they are set, enter* MOWBRAY *in arms, defendant, with a* Herald.

K. Rich. Marshal, demand of yonder champion

The cause of his arrival here in arms :
Ask him his name and orderly proceed
To swear him in the justice of his cause. 10

Mar. In God's name and the king's, say who thou art
And why thou comest thus knightly clad in arms,
Against what man thou comest, and what thy quarrel :
Speak truly, on thy knighthood and thy oath ;
As so defend thee heaven and thy valour !

Mow. My name is Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk ;
Who hither come engaged by my oath—
Which God defend a knight should violate !—
Both to defend my loyalty and truth
To God, my king and my succeeding issue, 20
Against the Duke of Hereford that appeals me ;
And, by the grace of God and this mine arm,
To prove him, in defending of myself,
A traitor to my God, my king, and me :
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !

The trumpets sound. Enter BOLINGBROKE, *appellant, in armour, with a* Herald.

K. Rich. Marshal, ask yonder knight in arms,
Both who he is and why he cometh hither
Thus plated in habiliments of war,
And formally, according to our law,
Depose him in the justice of his cause. 30

Mar. What is thy name ? and wherefore comest thou hither,
Before King Richard in his royal lists ?
Against whom comest thou ? and what's thy quarrel ?
Speak like a true knight, so defend thee heaven !

Boling. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby
Am I ; who ready here do stand in arms,
To prove, by God's grace and my body's valour,
In lists, on Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk,
That he is a traitor, foul and dangerous,

To God of heaven, King Richard and to me ; 40
And as I truly fight, defend me heaven !
Mar. On pain of death, no person be so bold
Or daring-hardy as to touch the lists,
Except the marshal and such officers
Appointed to direct these fair designs.
Boling. Lord marshal, let me kiss my sovereign's hand,
And bow my knee before his majesty :
For Mowbray and myself are like two men
That vow a long and weary pilgrimage ;
Then let us take a ceremonious leave 50
And loving farewell of our several friends.
Mar. The appellant in all duty greets your highness,
And craves to kiss your hand and take his leave.
K. Rich. We will descend and fold him in our arms.
Cousin of Hereford, as thy cause is right,
So be thy fortune in this royal fight !
Farewell, my blood ; which if to-day thou shed,
Lament we may, but not revenge thee dead.
Boling. O, let no noble eye profane a tear
For me, if I be gored with Mowbray's spear : 60
As confident as is the falcon's flight
Against a bird, do I with Mowbray fight.
My loving lord, I take my leave of you ;
Of you, my noble cousin, Lord Aumerle ;
Not sick, although I have to do with death,
But lusty, young, and cheerly drawing breath.
Lo, as at English feasts, so I regreet
The daintiest last, to make the end most sweet :
O thou, the earthly author of my blood,
Whose youthful spirit, in me regenerate, 70
Doth with a twofold vigour lift me up
To reach at victory above my head,
Add proof unto mine armour with thy prayers ;
And with thy blessings steel my lance's point,
That it may enter Mowbray's waxen coat,

And furbish new the name of John a Gaunt,
Even in the lusty haviour of his son.
Gaunt. God in thy good cause make thee prosperous!
Be swift like lightning in the execution;
And let thy blows, doubly redoubled, 80
Fall like amazing thunder on the casque
Of thy adverse pernicious enemy:
Rouse up thy youthful blood, be valiant and live.
Boling. Mine innocency and Saint George to thrive!
Mow. However God or fortune cast my lot,
There lives or dies, true to King Richard's throne,
A loyal, just and upright gentleman:
Never did captive with a freer heart
Cast off his chains of bondage and embrace
His golden uncontroll'd enfranchisement, 90
More than my dancing soul doth celebrate
This feast of battle with mine adversary.
Most mighty liege, and my companion peers,
Take from my mouth the wish of happy years:
As gentle and as jocund as to jest
Go I to fight: truth hath a quiet breast.
K. Rich. Farewell, my lord: securely I espy
Virtue and valour couched in thine eye.
Order the trial, marshal, and begin.
Mar. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby, 100
Receive thy lance; and God defend the right!
Boling. Strong as a tower in hope, I cry amen.
Mar. Go bear this lance to Thomas, Duke of Norfolk.
First Her. Harry of Hereford, Lancaster and Derby,
Stands here for God, his sovereign and himself,
On pain to be found false and recreant,
To prove the Duke of Norfolk, Thomas Mowbray,
A traitor to his God, his king and him;
And dares him to set forward to the fight.
Sec. Her. Here standeth Thomas Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk, 110

On pain to be found false and recreant,
Both to defend himself and to approve
Henry of Hereford, Lancaster, and Derby,
To God, his sovereign and to him disloyal;
Courageously and with a free desire
Attending but the signal to begin.

Mar. Sound, trumpets; and set forward, combatants.

[*A charge sounded.*

Stay, the king hath thrown his warder down.

K. Rich. Let them lay by their helmets and their spears,
And both return back to their chairs again: 120
Withdraw with us: and let the trumpets sound
While we return these dukes what we decree.

[*A long flourish.*

Draw near,
And list what with our council we have done.
For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd
With that dear blood which it hath fostered;
And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect
Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours' sword;
And for we think the eagle-winged pride
Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts, 130
With rival-hating envy, set on you
To wake our peace, which in our country's cradle
Draws the sweet infant breath of gentle sleep;
Which so roused up with boisterous untuned drums,
With harsh-resounding trumpets' dreadful bray,
And grating shock of wrathful iron arms,
Might from our quiet confines fright fair peace
And make us wade even in our kindred's blood;
Therefore, we banish you our territories:
You, cousin Hereford, upon pain of life, 140
Till twice five summers have enrich'd our fields
Shall not regreet our fair dominions,
But tread the stranger paths of banishment.

Boling. Your will be done: this must my comfort be,

That sun that warms you here shall shine on me ;
And those his golden beams to you here lent
Shall point on me and gild my banishment.
K. Rich. Norfolk, for thee remains a heavier doom,
Which I with some unwillingness pronounce :
The sly slow hours shall not determinate 150
The dateless limit of thy dear exile ;
The hopeless word of 'never to return'
Breathe I against thee, upon pain of life.
Mow. A heavy sentence, my most sovereign liege,
And all unlook'd for from your highness' mouth :
A dearer merit, not so deep a maim
As to be cast forth in the common air,
Have I deserved at your highness' hands.
The language I have learn'd these forty years,
My native English, now I must forgo : 160
And now my tongue's use is to me no more
Than an unstringed viol or a harp,
Or like a cunning instrument cased up,
Or, being open, put into his hands
That knows no touch to tune the harmony :
Within my mouth you have engaol'd my tongue,
Doubly portcullis'd with my teeth and lips ;
And dull unfeeling barren ignorance
Is made my gaoler to attend on me.
I am too old to fawn upon a nurse, 170
Too far in years to be a pupil now :
What is thy sentence then but speechless death,
Which robs my tongue from breathing native breath ?
K. Rich. It boots thee not to be compassionate :
After our sentence plaining comes too late.
Mow. Then thus I turn me from my country's light,
To dwell in solemn shades of endless night.
K. Rich. Return again, and take an oath with thee.
Lay on our royal sword your banish'd hands ;
Swear by the duty that you owe to God— 180

Our part therein we banish with yourselves—
To keep the oath that we administer:
You never shall, so help you truth and God!
Embrace each other's love in banishment;
Nor never look upon each other's face;
Nor never write, regreet, nor reconcile
This louring tempest of your home-bred hate;
Nor never by advised purpose meet
To plot, contrive, or complot any ill
'Gainst us, our state, our subjects, or our land. 190

Boling. I swear.

Mow. And I, to keep all this.

Boling. Norfolk, so far as to mine enemy:—
By this time, had the king permitted us,
One of our souls had wander'd in the air,
Banish'd this frail sepulchre of our flesh,
As now our flesh is banish'd from this land:
Confess thy treasons ere thou fly the realm;
Since thou hast far to go, bear not along
The clogging burthen of a guilty soul. 200

Mow. No, Bolingbroke: if ever I were traitor,
My name be blotted from the book of life,
And I from heaven banish'd as from hence!
But what thou art, God, thou, and I do know;
And all too soon, I fear, the king shall rue.
Farewell, my liege. Now no way can I stray;
Save back to England, all the world's my way. [*Exit.*

K. Rich. Uncle, even in the glasses of thine eyes
I see thy grieved heart: thy sad aspect
Hath from the number of his banish'd years 210
Pluck'd four away. [*To Boling.*] Six frozen winters spent,
Return with welcome home from banishment.

Boling. How long a time lies in one little word!
Four lagging winters and four wanton springs
End in a word: such is the breath of kings.

Gaunt. I thank my liege, that in regard of me

He shortens four years of my son's exile :
But little vantage shall I reap thereby ;
For, ere the six years that he hath to spend
Can change their moons and bring their times about, 220
My oil-dried lamp and time-bewasted light
Shall be extinct with age and endless night ;
My inch of taper will be burnt and done,
And blindfold death not let me see my son.

K. Rich. Why, uncle, thou hast many years to live.

Gaunt. But not a minute, king, that thou canst give :
Shorten my days thou canst with sullen sorrow,
And pluck nights from me, but not lend a morrow ;
Thou canst help time to furrow me with age,
But stop no wrinkle in his pilgrimage ; 230
Thy word is current with him for my death,
But dead, thy kingdom cannot buy my breath.

K. Rich. Thy son is banish'd upon good advice,
Whereto thy tongue a party-verdict gave :
Why at our justice seem'st thou then to lour ?

Gaunt. Things sweet to taste prove in digestion sour.
You urged me as a judge ; but I had rather
You would have bid me argue like a father.
O, had it been a stranger, not my child,
To smooth his fault I should have been more mild : 240
A partial slander sought I to avoid,
And in the sentence my own life destroy'd.
Alas, I look'd when some of you should say,
I was too strict to make mine own away ;
But you gave leave to my unwilling tongue
Against my will to do myself this wrong.

K. Rich. Cousin, farewell ; and, uncle, bid him so :
Six years we banish him, and he shall go.

[*Flourish. Exeunt King Richard and Train.*

Aum. Cousin, farewell : what presence must not know,
From where you do remain let paper show. 250

Mar. My lord, no leave take I ; for I will ride,

As far as land will let me, by your side.
Gaunt. O, to what purpose dost thou hoard thy words,
That thou return'st no greeting to thy friends?
Boling. I have too few to take my leave of you,
When the tongue's office should be prodigal
To breathe the abundant dolour of the heart.
Gaunt. Thy grief is but thy absence for a time.
Boling. Joy absent, grief is present for that time.
Gaunt. What is six winters? they are quickly gone. 260
Boling. To men in joy; but grief makes one hour ten.
Gaunt. Call it a travel that thou tak'st for pleasure.
Boling. My heart will sigh when I miscall it so,
Which finds it an inforced pilgrimage.
Gaunt. The sullen passage of thy weary steps
Esteem as foil wherein thou art to set
The precious jewel of thy home return.
Boling. Nay, rather, every tedious stride I make
Will but remember me what a deal of world
I wander from the jewels that I love. 270
Must I not serve a long apprenticehood
To foreign passages, and in the end,
Having my freedom, boast of nothing else
But that I was a journeyman to grief?
Gaunt. All places that the eye of heaven visits
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens.
Teach thy necessity to reason thus;
There is no virtue like necessity.
Think not the king did banish thee,
But thou the king. Woe doth the heavier sit, 280
Where it perceives it is but faintly borne.
Go, say I sent thee forth to purchase honour
And not the king exiled thee; or suppose
Devouring pestilence hangs in our air
And thou art flying to a fresher clime:
Look, what thy soul holds dear, imagine it
To lie that way thou go'st, not whence thou comest:

Suppose the singing birds musicians,
The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strew'd,
The flowers fair ladies, and thy steps no more 290
Than a delightful measure or a dance ;
For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite
The man that mocks at it and sets it light.

Boling. O, who can hold a fire in his hand
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus ?
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite
By bare imagination of a feast ?
Or wallow naked in December snow
By thinking on fantastic summer's heat ?
O, no ! the apprehension of the good 300
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse :
Fell sorrow's tooth doth never rankle more
Than when he bites, but lanceth not the sore.

Gaunt. Come, come, my son, I 'll bring thee on thy way :
Had I thy youth and cause, I would not stay.

Boling. Then, England's ground, farewell ; sweet soil, adieu ;
My mother, and my nurse, that bears me yet !
Where'er I wander, boast of this I can,
Though banish'd, yet a trueborn Englishman. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *The court.*

Enter the KING, *with* BAGOT *and* GREEN *at one door ; and the* DUKE OF AUMERLE *at another.*

K. Rich. We did observe. Cousin Aumerle,
How far brought you high Hereford on his way ?

Aum. I brought high Hereford, if you call him so,
But to the next highway, and there I left him.

K. Rich. And say, what store of parting tears were shed ?

Aum. Faith, none for me ; except the north-east wind,
Which then blew bitterly against our faces,

Awaked the sleeping rheum, and so by chance
Did grace our hollow parting with a tear.

K. Rich. What said our cousin when you parted with him? 10

Aum. 'Farewell:'
And, for my heart disdained that my tongue
Should so profane the word, that taught me craft
To counterfeit oppression of such grief,
That words seem'd buried in my sorrow's grave.
Marry, would the word 'farewell' have lengthened hours
And added years to his short banishment,
He should have had a volume of farewells;
But since it would not, he had none of me.

K. Rich. He is our cousin, cousin; but 'tis doubt, 20
When time shall call him home from banishment,
Whether our kinsman come to see his friends.
Ourself and Bushy, Bagot here and Green
Observed his courtship to the common people;
How he did seem to dive into their hearts
With humble and familiar courtesy,
What reverence he did throw away on slaves,
Wooing poor craftsmen with the craft of smiles
And patient underbearing of his fortune,
As 'twere to banish their affects with him. 30
Off goes his bonnet to an oyster-wench;
A brace of draymen bid God speed him well
And had the tribute of his supple knee,
With 'Thanks, my countrymen, my loving friends;'
As were our England in reversion his,
And he our subjects' next degree in hope.

Green. Well, he is gone; and with him go these thoughts.
Now for the rebels which stand out in Ireland,
Expedient manage must be made, my liege,
Ere further leisure yield them further means 40
For their advantage and your highness' loss.

K. Rich. We will ourself in person to this war:

And, for our coffers, with too great a court
And liberal largess, are grown somewhat light,
We are inforced to farm our royal realm ;
The revenue whereof shall furnish us
For our affairs in hand : if that come short,
Our substitutes at home shall have blank charters ;
Whereto, when they shall know what men are rich,
They shall subscribe them for large sums of gold 50
And send them after to supply our wants ;
For we will make for Ireland presently.

Enter BUSHY.

Bushy, what news ?
Bushy. Old John of Gaunt is grievous sick, my lord,
Suddenly taken ; and hath sent post haste
To entreat your majesty to visit him.
K. Rich. Where lies he ?
Bushy. At Ely House.
K. Rich. Now put it, God, in the physician's mind
To help him to his grave immediately ! 60
The lining of his coffers shall make coats
To deck our soldiers for these Irish wars.
Come, gentlemen, let's all go visit him :
Pray God we may make haste, and come too late !
All. Amen. [*Exeunt.*

ACT II.

SCENE I. *Ely House.*

Enter JOHN OF GAUNT *sick, with the* DUKE OF YORK, *etc.*

Gaunt. Will the king come, that I may breathe my last
In wholesome counsel to his unstaid youth ?
York. Vex not yourself, nor strive not with your breath ;
For all in vain comes counsel to his ear.

Gaunt. O, but they say the tongues of dying men
Enforce attention like deep harmony :
Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain,
For they breathe truth that breathe their words in pain.
He that no more must say is listen'd more
Than they whom youth and ease have taught to glose : 10
More are men's ends mark'd than their lives before :
The setting sun, and music at the close,
As the last taste of sweets, is sweetest last,
Writ in remembrance more than things long past :
Though Richard my life's counsel would not hear,
My death's sad tale may yet undeaf his ear.
York. No ; it is stopped with other flattering sounds,
As praises of his state ; then, there are found
Lascivious metres, to whose venom sound
The open ear of youth doth always listen ; 20
Report of fashions in proud Italy,
Whose manners still our tardy apish nation
Limps after in base imitation.
Where doth the world thrust forth a vanity—
So it be new, there's no respect how vile—
That is not quickly buzz'd into his ears ?
Then all too late comes counsel to be heard,
Where will doth mutiny with wit's regard.
Direct not him whose way himself will choose :
'Tis breath thou lack'st, and that breath wilt thou lose. 30
Gaunt. Methinks I am a prophet new inspired
And thus expiring do foretell of him :
His rash fierce blaze of riot cannot last,
For violent fires soon burn out themselves ;
Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short ;
He tires betimes that spurs too fast betimes ;
With eager feeding food doth choke the feeder :
Light vanity, insatiate cormorant,
Consuming means, soon prays upon itself.
This royal throne of kings, this scepter'd isle, 40

This earth of Majesty, this seat of Mars,
This other Eden, demi-paradise,
This fortress built by Nature for herself
Against infection and the hand of war,
This happy breed of men, this little world,
This precious stone set in the silver sea,
Which serves it in the office of a wall,
Or as a moat defensive to a house,
Against the envy of less happier lands,
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England, 50
This nurse, this teeming womb of royal kings,
Fear'd by their breed and famous by their birth,
Renowned for their deeds as far from home,
For Christian service and true chivalry,
As is the sepulchre in stubborn Jewry
Of the world's ransom, blessed Mary's son ;
This land of such dear souls, this dear dear land,
Dear for her reputation through the world,
Is now leased out, I die pronouncing it,
Like to a tenement or pelting farm : 60
England, bound in with the triumphant sea,
Whose rocky shore beats back the envious siege
Of watery Neptune, is now bound in with shame,
With inky blots and rotten parchment bonds :
That England, that was wont to conquer others,
Hath made a shameful conquest of itself.
Ah, would the scandal vanish with my life,
How happy then were my ensuing death !

Enter KING RICHARD *and* QUEEN, AUMERLE, BUSHY, GREEN, BAGOT, ROSS, *and* WILLOUGHBY.

York. The king is come : deal mildly with his youth ;
For young hot colts being raged do rage the more. 70
Queen. How fares our noble uncle, Lancaster ?
K. Rich. What comfort, man ? how is't with aged Gaunt ?
Gaunt. O, how that name befits my composition !

Old Gaunt indeed, and gaunt in being old :
Within me grief hath kept a tedious fast ;
And who abstains from meat that is not gaunt ?
For sleeping England long time have I watch'd ;
Watching breeds leanness, leanness is all gaunt :
The pleasure that some fathers feed upon,
Is my strict fast ; I mean, my children's looks ; 80
And therein fasting, hast thou made me gaunt :
Gaunt am I for the grave, gaunt as a grave,
Whose hollow womb inherits nought but bones.

K. Rich. Can sick men play so nicely with their names ?

Gaunt. No, misery makes sport to mock itself :
Since thou dost seek to kill my name in me,
I mock my name, great king, to flatter thee.

K. Rich. Should dying men flatter with those that live ?

Gaunt. No, no, men living flatter those that die.

K. Rich. Thou, now a-dying, say'st thou flatterest me. 90

Gaunt. O, no ! thou diest, though I the sicker be.

K. Rich. I am in health, I breathe, and see thee ill.

Gaunt. Now He that made me knows I see thee ill ;
Ill in myself to see, and in thee seeing ill.
Thy death-bed is no lesser than thy land
Wherein thou liest in reputation sick ;
And thou, too careless patient as thou art,
Commit'st thy anointed body to the cure
Of those physicians that first wounded thee :
A thousand flatterers sit within thy crown, 100
Whose compass is no bigger than thy head ;
And yet, incaged in so small a verge,
The waste is no whit lesser than thy land.
O, had thy grandsire with a prophet's eye
Seen how his son's son should destroy his sons,
From forth thy reach he would have laid thy shame,
Deposing thee before thou wert possess'd,
Which art possess'd now to depose thyself.
Why, cousin, wert thou regent of the world,

It were a shame to let this land by lease ; 110
But for thy world enjoying but this land,
Is it not more than shame to shame it so ?
Landlord of England art thou now, not king :
Thy state of law is bondslave to the law ;
And thou—

K. Rich. A lunatic lean-witted fool,
Presuming on an ague's privilege,
Darest with thy frozen admonition
Make pale our cheek, chasing the royal blood
With fury from his native residence.
Now, by my seat's right royal majesty, 120
Wert thou not brother to great Edward's son,
This tongue that runs so roundly in thy head
Should run thy head from thy unreverent shoulders.

Gaunt. O, spare me not, my brother Edward's son,
For that I was his father Edward's son :
That blood already, like the pelican,
Hast thou tapp'd out and drunkenly caroused :
My brother Gloucester, plain well-meaning soul,
Whom fair befal in heaven 'mongst happy souls !
May be a precedent and witness good 130
That thou respect'st not spilling Edward's blood :
Join with the present sickness that I have ;
And thy unkindness be like crooked age,
To crop at once a too-long wither'd flower.
Live in thy shame, but die not shame with thee !
These words hereafter thy tormentors be !
Convey me to my bed, then to my grave :
Love they to live that love and honour have.

[*Exit, borne off by his Attendants.*

K. Rich. And let them die that age and sullens have ;
For both hast thou, and both become the grave. 140

York. I do beseech your majesty, impute his words
To wayward sickliness and age in him :
He loves you, on my life, and holds you dear

As Harry Duke of Hereford, were he here.
K. Rich. Right, you say true: as Hereford's love, so his;
As theirs, so mine; and all be as it is.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.

North. My liege, old Gaunt commends him to your majesty.
K. Rich. What says he?
North. Nay, nothing; all is said:
His tongue is now a stringless instrument;
Words, life and all, old Lancaster hath spent. 150
York. Be York the next that must be bankrupt so!
Though death be poor, it ends a mortal woe.
K. Rich. The ripest fruit first falls, and so doth he;
His time is spent, our pilgrimage must be.
So much for that. Now for our Irish wars:
We must supplant those rough rug-headed kerns,
Which live like venom where no venom else
But only they have privilege to live.
And for these great affairs do ask some charge,
Towards our assistance we do seize to us 160
The plate, coin, revenues and moveables,
Whereof our uncle Gaunt did stand possess'd.
York. How long shall I be patient? ah, how long
Shall tender duty make me suffer wrong?
Not Gloucester's death, nor Hereford's banishment,
Not Gaunt's rebukes, nor England's private wrongs,
Nor the prevention of poor Bolingbroke
About his marriage, nor my own disgrace,
Have ever made me sour my patient cheek,
Or bend one wrinkle on my sovereign's face. 170
I am the last of noble Edward's sons,
Of whom thy father, Prince of Wales, was first:
In war was never lion raged more fierce,
In peace was never gentle lamb more mild,
Than was that young and princely gentleman.
His face thou hast, for even so look'd he,

Accomplish'd with the number of thy hours ;
But when he frown'd, it was against the French
And not against his friends ; his noble hand
Did win what he did spend and spent not that 180
Which his triumphant father's hand had won ;
His hands were guilty of no kindred blood,
But bloody with the enemies of his kin.
O Richard ! York is too far gone with grief,
Or else he never would compare between.

K. Rich. Why, uncle, what's the matter ?

York. O my liege,
Pardon me, if you please ; if not, I, pleased
Not to be pardon'd, am content withal.
Seek you to seize and gripe into your hands
The royalties and rights of banish'd Hereford ? 190
Is not Gaunt dead, and doth not Hereford live ?
Was not Gaunt just, and is not Harry true ?
Did not the one deserve to have an heir ?
Is not his heir a well-deserving son ?
Take Hereford's rights away, and take from Time
His charters and his customary rights ;
Let not to-morrow then ensue to-day ;
Be not thyself ; for how art thou a king
But by fair sequence and succession ?
Now, afore God—God forbid I say true !— 200
If you do wrongfully seize Hereford's rights,
Call in the letters-patents that he hath
By his attorneys-general to sue
His livery, and deny his offer'd homage,
You pluck a thousand dangers on your head,
You lose a thousand well-disposed hearts
And prick my tender patience to those thoughts
Which honour and allegiance cannot think.

K. Rich. Think what you will, we seize into our hands
His plate, his goods, his money and his lands. 210

York. I'll not be by the while : my liege, farewell :

What will ensue hereof, there's none can tell ;
But by bad courses may be understood
That their events can never fall out good. [*Exit.*

K. Rich. Go, Bushy, to the Earl of Wiltshire straight :
Bid him repair to us to Ely House
To see this business. To-morrow next
We will for Ireland ; and 'tis time, I trow :
And we create, in absence of ourself,
Our uncle York lord governor of England ; 220
For he is just and always loved us well.
Come on, our queen : to-morrow must we part ;
Be merry, for our time of stay is short.

[*Flourish. Exeunt King, Queen, Aumerle, Bushy, Green, and Bagot.*

North. Well, lords, the Duke of Lancaster is dead.

Ross. And living too ; for now his son is duke.

Willo. Barely in title, not in revenue.

North. Richly in both, if justice had her right.

Ross. My heart is great ; but it must break with silence,
Ere 't be disburden'd with a liberal tongue.

North. Nay, speak thy mind ; and let him ne'er speak more 230
That speaks thy words again to do thee harm !

Willo. Tends that thou wouldst speak to the Duke of Hereford ?
If it be so, out with it boldly, man ;
Quick is mine ear to hear of good towards him.

Ross. No good at all that I can do for him ;
Unless you call it good to pity him,
Bereft and gelded of his patrimony.

North. Now, afore God, 'tis shame such wrongs are borne
In him, a royal prince, and many moe
Of noble blood in this declining land. 240
The king is not himself, but basely led
By flatterers ; and what they will inform,
Merely in hate, 'gainst any of us all,

That will the king severely prosecute
'Gainst us, our lives, our children, and our heirs.
Ross. The commons hath he pill'd with grievous taxes,
And lost their hearts : the nobles hath he fined
For ancient quarrels, and quite lost their hearts.
Willo. And daily new exactions are devised,
As blanks, benevolences, and I wot not what : 250
But what, o' God's name, doth become of this ?
North. Wars have not wasted it, for warr'd he hath not,
But basely yielded upon compromise
That which his noble ancestors achieved with blows :
More hath he spent in peace than they in wars.
Ross. The Earl of Wiltshire hath the realm in farm.
Willo. The king's grown bankrupt, like a broken man.
North. Reproach and dissolution hangeth over him.
Ross. He hath not money for these Irish wars,
His burthenous taxations notwithstanding, 260
But by the robbing of the banish'd duke.
North. His noble kinsman : most degenerate king !
But, lords, we hear this fearful tempest sing,
Yet seek no shelter to avoid the storm ;
We see the wind sit sore upon our sails,
And yet we strike not, but securely perish.
Ross. We see the very wreck that we must suffer ;
And unavoided is the danger now,
For suffering so the causes of our wreck.
North. Not so ; even through the hollow eyes of death 270
I spy life peering ; but I dare not say
How near the tidings of our comfort is.
Willo. Nay, let us share thy thoughts, as thou dost ours.
Ross. Be confident to speak, Northumberland :
We three are but thyself ; and, speaking so,
Thy words are but as thoughts ; therefore, be bold.
North. Then thus : I have from Port le Blanc, a bay
In Brittany, received intelligence

That Harry Duke of Hereford, Rainold Lord Cobham,
. 280
That late broke from the Duke of Exeter,
His brother, Archbishop late of Canterbury,
Sir Thomas Erpingham, Sir John Ramston,
Sir John Norbery, Sir Robert Waterton and Francis Quoint,
All these well furnish'd by the Duke of Bretagne
With eight tall ships, three thousand men of war,
Are making hither with all due expedience
And shortly mean to touch our northern shore :
Perhaps they had ere this, but that they stay
The first departing of the king for Ireland. 290
If then we shall shake off our slavish yoke,
Imp out our drooping country's broken wing,
Redeem from broking pawn the blemish'd crown,
Wipe off the dust that hides our sceptre's gilt
And make high majesty look like itself,
Away with me in post to Ravenspurgh ;
But if you faint, as fearing to do so,
Stay and be secret, and myself will go.

Ross. To horse, to horse ! urge doubts to them that fear.

Willo. Hold out my horse, and I will first be there. 300

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *Windsor Castle.*

Enter QUEEN, BUSHY, *and* BAGOT.

Bushy. Madam, your majesty is too much sad :
You promised, when you parted with the king,
To lay aside life-harming heaviness
And entertain a cheerful disposition.

Queen. To please the king I did ; to please myself
I cannot do it ; yet I know no cause
Why I should welcome such a guest as grief,
Save bidding farewell to so sweet a guest
As my sweet Richard : yet again, methinks,

Some unborn sorrow, ripe in fortune's womb, 10
Is coming towards me, and my inward soul
With nothing trembles : at some thing it grieves,
More than with parting from my lord the king.

Bushy. Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows,
Which shows like grief itself, but is not so ;
For sorrow's eye, glazed with blinding tears,
Divides one thing entire to many objects ;
Like perspectives, which rightly gazed upon
Show nothing but confusion, eyed awry
Distinguish form : so your sweet majesty 20
Looking awry upon your lord's departure,
Find shapes of grief, more than himself, to wail ;
Which, look'd on as it is, is nought but shadows
Of what it is not. Then, thrice-gracious queen,
More than your lord's departure weep not : more's not seen ;
Or if it be, 'tis with false sorrow's eye,
Which for things true weeps things imaginary.

Queen. It may be so ; but yet my inward soul
Persuades me it is otherwise : howe'er it be,
I cannot but be sad ; so heavy sad 30
As,—though, in thinking, on no thought I think,—
Makes me with heavy nothing faint and shrink.

Bushy. 'Tis nothing but conceit, my gracious lady.

Queen. 'Tis nothing less : conceit is still derived
From some forefather grief ; mine is not so,
For nothing hath begot my something grief ;
Or something hath the nothing that I grieve :
'Tis in reversion that I do possess ;
But what it is, that is not yet known ; what
I cannot name ; 'tis nameless woe, I wot. 40

Enter GREEN.

Green. God save your majesty ! and well met, gentlemen :
I hope the king is not yet shipp'd for Ireland.

Queen. Why hopest thou so? 'tis better hope he is;
For his designs crave haste, his haste good hope:
Then wherefore dost thou hope he is not shipp'd?
Green. That he, our hope, might have retired his power,
And driven into despair an enemy's hope,
Who strongly hath set footing in this land:
The banish'd Bolingbroke repeals himself,
And with uplifted arms is safe arrived 50
At Ravenspurgh.
Queen. Now God in heaven forbid!
Green. Ah, madam, 'tis too true: and that is worse,
The Lord Northumberland, his son young Henry Percy,
The Lords of Ross, Beaumond, and Willoughby,
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him.
Bushy. Why have you not proclaim'd Northumberland
And all the rest revolted faction traitors?
Green. We have: whereupon the Earl of Worcester
Hath broke his staff, resign'd his stewardship,
And all the household servants fled with him 60
To Bolingbroke.
Queen. So, Green, thou art the midwife to my woe,
And Bolingbroke my sorrow's dismal heir:
Now hath my soul brought forth her prodigy,
And I, a gasping new-deliver'd mother,
Have woe to woe, sorrow to sorrow join'd.
Bushy. Despair not, madam.
Queen. Who shall hinder me?
I will despair, and be at enmity
With cozening hope: he is a flatterer,
A parasite, a keeper back of death, 70
Who gently would dissolve the bands of life,
Which false hope lingers in extremity.

Enter YORK.

Green. Here comes the Duke of York.
Queen. With signs of war about his aged neck:

O, full of careful business are his looks !
Uncle, for God's sake, speak comfortable words.
York. Should I do so, I should belie my thoughts :
Comfort's in heaven ; and we are on the earth,
Where nothing lives but crosses, cares and grief.
Your husband, he is gone to save far off, 80
Whilst others come to make him lose at home :
Here am I left to underprop his land,
Who, weak with age, cannot support myself :
Now comes the sick hour that his surfeit made ;
Now shall he try his friends that flatter'd him.

Enter a Servant.

Serv. My lord, your son was gone before I came.
York. He was ? Why, so ! go all which way it will !
The nobles they are fled, the commons they are cold,
And will, I fear, revolt on Hereford's side.
Sirrah, get thee to Plashy, to my sister Gloucester ; 90
Bid her send me presently a thousand pound :
Hold, take my ring.
Serv. My lord, I had forgot to tell your lordship,
To-day, as I came by, I called there ;
But I shall grieve you to report the rest.
York. What is't, knave ?
Serv. An hour before I came, the duchess died.
York. God for his mercy ! what a tide of woes
Comes rushing on this woeful land at once !
I know not what to do : I would to God, 100
So my untruth had not provoked him to it,
The king had cut off my head with my brother's.
What, are there no posts despatch'd for Ireland ?
How shall we do for money for these wars ?
Come, sister,—cousin, I would say,—pray, pardon me.
Go, fellow, get thee home, provide some carts
And bring away the armour that is there. [*Exit Servant.*
Gentlemen, will you go muster men ?

If I know how or which way to order these affairs
Thus thrust disorderly into my hands, 110
Never believe me. Both are my kinsmen :
The one is my sovereign, whom both my oath
And duty bids defend ; the other again
Is my kinsman, whom the king hath wrong'd,
Whom conscience and my kindred bids to right.
Well, somewhat we must do. Come, cousin, I'll
Dispose of you.
Gentlemen, go, muster up your men,
And meet me presently at Berkeley.
I should to Plashy too ; 120
But time will not permit : all is uneven,
And everything is left at six and seven.

[*Exeunt York and Queen.*

Bushy. The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland,
But none returns. For us to levy power
Proportionable to the enemy
Is all unpossible.

Green. Besides, our nearness to the king in love
Is near the hate of those love not the king.

Bagot. And that's the wavering commons : for their love
Lies in their purses, and whoso empties them 130
By so much fills their hearts with deadly hate.

Bushy. Wherein the king stands generally condemn'd.

Bagot. If judgement lie in them, then so do we,
Because we ever have been near the king.

Green. Well, I will for refuge straight to Bristol castle :
The Earl of Wiltshire is already there.

Bushy. Thither will I with you ; for little office
The hateful commons will perform for us,
Except like curs to tear us all to pieces.
Will you go along with us ? 140

Bagot. No ; I will to Ireland to his majesty.
Farewell : if heart's presages be not vain,
We three here part that ne'er shall meet again.

Bushy. That's as York thrives to beat back Bolingbroke.
Green. Alas, poor duke! the task he undertakes
Is numbering sands and drinking oceans dry:
Where one on his side fights, thousands will fly.
Farewell at once, for once, for all, and ever.
Bushy. Well, we may meet again.
Bagot. I fear me, never.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *Wilds in Gloucestershire.*

Enter BOLINGBROKE *and* NORTHUMBERLAND, *with Forces.*

Boling. How far is it, my Lord, to Berkeley now?
North. Believe me, noble lord,
I am a stranger here in Gloucestershire:
These high wild hills and rough uneven ways
Draws out our miles, and makes them wearisome;
And yet your fair discourse hath been as sugar,
Making the hard way sweet and delectable.
But I bethink me what a weary way
From Ravenspurgh to Cotswold will be found
In Ross and Willoughby, wanting your company, 10
Which, I protest, hath very much beguiled
The tediousness and process of my travel:
But theirs is sweetened with the hope to have
The present benefit which I possess;
And hope to joy is little less in joy
Than hope enjoy'd: by this the weary lords
Shall make their way seem short, as mine hath done
By sight of what I have, your noble company.
Boling. Of much less value is my company
Than your good words. But who comes here? 20

Enter HENRY PERCY.

North. It is my son, young Harry Percy,
Sent from my brother Worcester, whencesoever.

Harry, how fares your uncle?

Percy. I had thought, my lord, to have learn'd his health of you.

North. Why, is he not with the queen?

Percy. No, my good Lord; he hath forsook the court,
Broken his staff of office and dispersed
The household of the king.

North. What was his reason?
He was not so resolved when last we spake together.

Percy. Because your lordship was proclaimed traitor. 30
But he, my lord, is gone to Ravenspurgh,
To offer service to the Duke of Hereford,
And sent me over by Berkeley, to discover
What power the Duke of York had levied there;
Then with directions to repair to Ravenspurgh.

North. Have you forgot the Duke of Hereford, boy?

Percy. No, my good lord, for that is not forgot
Which ne'er I did remember: to my knowledge,
I never in my life did look on him.

North. Then learn to know him now; this is the duke. 40

Percy. My gracious lord, I tender you my service,
Such as it is, being tender, raw and young;
Which elder days shall ripen and confirm
To more approved service and desert.

Boling. I thank thee, gentle Percy; and be sure
I count myself in nothing else so happy
As in a soul remembering my good friends;
And, as my fortune ripens with thy love,
It shall be still thy true love's recompense:
My heart this covenant makes, my hand thus seals it. 50

North. How far is it to Berkeley? and what stir
Keeps good old York there with his men of war?

Percy. There stands the castle, by yon tuft of trees,
Mann'd with three hundred men, as I have heard;
And in it are the Lords of York, Berkeley, and Seymour;
None else of name and noble estimate.

Enter ROSS *and* WILLOUGHBY.

North. Here come the Lords of Ross and Willoughby,
Bloody with spurring, fiery-red with haste.
Boling. Welcome, my lords. I wot your love pursues
A banish'd traitor : all my treasury 60
Is yet but unfelt thanks, which more enrich'd
Shall be your love and labour's recompense.
Ross. Your presence makes us rich, most noble lord.
Willo. And far surmounts our labour to attain it.
Boling. Evermore thanks, the exchequer of the poor ;
Which, till my infant fortune comes to years,
Stands for my bounty. But who comes here ?

Enter BERKELEY.

North. It is my Lord of Berkeley, as I guess.
Berk. My Lord of Hereford, my message is to you.
Boling. My lord, my answer is—to Lancaster ; 70
And I am come to seek that name in England ;
And I must find that title in your tongue,
Before I make reply to aught you say.
Berk. Mistake me not, my lord ; 'tis not my meaning
To raze one title of your honour out :
To you, my lord, I come, what lord you will,
From the most gracious regent of this land,
The Duke of York, to know what pricks you on
To take advantage of the absent time,
And fright our native peace with self-born arms. 80

Enter YORK *attended.*

Boling. I shall not need transport my words by you ;
Here comes his grace in person.
My noble uncle ! [*Kneels.*
York. Show me thy humble heart, and not thy knee,
Whose duty is deceivable and false.
Boling. My gracious uncle—

York. Tut, tut!
Grace me no grace, nor uncle me no uncle:
I am no traitor's uncle; and that word 'grace'
In an ungracious mouth is but profane.
Why have those banish'd and forbidden legs 90
Dared once to touch a dust of England's ground?
But then more 'why?' why have they dared to march
So many miles upon her peaceful bosom,
Frighting her pale-faced villages with war
And ostentation of despised arms?
Comest thou because the anointed king is hence?
Why, foolish boy, the king is left behind,
And in my loyal bosom lies his power.
Were I but now the lord of such hot youth
As when brave Gaunt, thy father, and myself 100
Rescued the Black Prince, that young Mars of men,
From forth the ranks of many thousand French,
O, then how quickly should this arm of mine,
Now prisoner to the palsy, chastise thee
And minister correction to thy fault!

Boling. My gracious uncle, let me know my fault:
On what condition stands it and wherein?

York. Even in condition of the worst degree,
In gross rebellion and detested treason:
Thou art a banish'd man, and here art come 110
Before the expiration of thy time,
In braving arms against thy sovereign.

Boling. As I was banish'd, I was banish'd Hereford;
But as I come, I come for Lancaster.
And, noble uncle, I beseech your grace
Look on my wrongs with an indifferent eye:
You are my father, for methinks in you
I see old Gaunt alive; O, then, my father,
Will you permit that I shall stand condemn'd
A wandering vagabond; my rights and royalties 120
Pluck'd from my arms perforce and given away

To upstart unthrifts? Wherefore was I born?
If that my cousin king be King of England,
It must be granted I am Duke of Lancaster.
You have a son, Aumerle, my noble cousin;
Had you first died, and he been thus trod down,
He should have found his uncle Gaunt a father,
To rouse his wrongs and chase them to the bay.
I am denied to sue my livery here,
And yet my letters-patents give me leave: 130
My father's goods are all distrain'd and sold,
And these and all are all amiss employ'd.
What would you have me do? I am a subject,
And I challenge law: attorneys are denied me;
And therefore personally I lay my claim
To my inheritance of free descent.

North. The noble duke hath been too much abused.

Ross. It stands your grace upon to do him right.

Willo. Base men by his endowments are made great.

York. My lords of England, let me tell you this: 140
I have had feeling of my cousin's wrongs
And laboured all I could to do him right;
But in this kind to come, in braving arms,
Be his own carver and cut out his way,
To find out right with wrong, it may not be;
And you that do abet him in this kind
Cherish rebellion and are rebels all.

North. The noble duke hath sworn his coming is
But for his own; and for the right of that
We all have strongly sworn to give him aid; 150
And let him ne'er see joy that breaks that oath!

York. Well, well, I see the issue of these arms:
I cannot mend it, I must needs confess,
Because my power is weak and all ill left:
But if I could, by Him that gave me life,
I would attach you all and make you stoop
Unto the sovereign mercy of the king;

But since I cannot, be it known to you
I do remain as neuter. So, fare you well;
Unless you please to enter in the castle 160
And there repose you for this night.

Boling. An offer, uncle, that we will accept:
But we must win your grace to go with us
To Bristol castle, which they say is held
By Bushy, Bagot and their complices,
The caterpillars of the commonwealth,
Which I have sworn to weed and pluck away.

York. It may be I will go with you: but yet I'll pause;
For I am loath to break our country's laws.
Nor friends nor foes, to me welcome you are: 170
Things past redress are now with me past care. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *A camp in Wales.*

Enter SALISBURY *and a* Welsh Captain.

Cap. My Lord of Salisbury, we have stay'd ten days,
And hardly kept our countrymen together,
And yet we hear no tidings from the king;
Therefore we will disperse ourselves: farewell.

Sal. Stay yet another day, thou trusty Welshman:
The king reposeth all his confidence in thee.

Cap. 'Tis thought the king is dead; we will not stay.
The bay-trees in our country are all wither'd
And meteors fright the fixed stars of heaven;
The pale-face moon looks bloody on the earth 10
And lean-look'd prophets whisper fearful change;
Rich men look sad and ruffians dance and leap,
The one in fear to lose what they enjoy,
The other to enjoy by rage and war:
These signs forerun the death or fall of kings.
Farewell: our countrymen are gone and fled,
As well assured Richard their king is dead. [*Exit.*

Sal. Ah, Richard, with the eyes of heavy mind
I see thy glory like a shooting star
Fall to the base earth from the firmament. 20
Thy sun sets weeping in the lowly west,
Witnessing storms to come, woe and unrest :
Thy friends are fled to wait upon thy foes,
And crossly to thy good all fortune goes. [*Exit.*

ACT III.

SCENE I. *Bristol. Before the castle.*

Enter BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, ROSS, PERCY, WILLOUGHBY, *with* BUSHY *and* GREEN, *prisoners.*

Boling. Bring forth these men.
Bushy and Green, I will not vex your souls—
Since presently your souls must part your bodies—
With too much urging your pernicious lives,
For 'twere no charity ; yet, to wash your blood
From off my hands, here in the view of men
I will unfold some causes of your deaths.
You have misled a prince, a royal king,
A happy gentleman in blood and lineaments,
By you unhappied and disfigured clean : 10
You have in manner with your sinful hours
Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him,
Broke the possession of a royal bed
And stain'd the beauty of a fair queen's cheeks
With tears drawn from her eyes by your foul wrongs.
Myself, a prince by fortune of my birth,
Near to the king in blood, and near in love
Till you did make him misinterpret me,
Have stoop'd my neck under your injuries,
And sigh'd my English breath in foreign clouds, 20
Eating the bitter bread of banishment ;

Whilst you have fed upon my signories,
Dispark'd my parks and fell'd my forest woods,
From my own windows torn my household coat,
Razed out my imprese, leaving me no sign,
Save men's opinions and my living blood,
To show the world I am a gentleman.
This and much more, much more than twice all this,
Condemns you to the death. See them deliver'd over
To execution and the hand of death. 30

Bushy. More welcome is the stroke of death to me
Than Bolingbroke to England. Lords, farewell.

Green. My comfort is that heaven will take our souls
And plague injustice with the pains of hell.

Boling. My Lord Northumberland, see them dispatch'd.
[*Exeunt Northumberland and others, with the prisoners.*

Uncle, you say the queen is at your house;
For God's sake, fairly let her be entreated:
Tell her I send to her my kind commends;
Take special care my greetings be deliver'd.

York. A gentleman of mine I have dispatch'd 40
With letters of your love to her at large.

Boling. Thanks, gentle uncle. Come, lords, away,
To fight with Glendower and his complices:
Awhile to work, and after holiday. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The coast of Wales. A castle in view.*

Drums: flourish and colours. Enter KING RICHARD, *the* BISHOP OF CARLISLE, AUMERLE, *and Soldiers.*

K. Rich. Barkloughly castle call they this at hand?

Aum. Yea, my lord. How brooks your grace the air,
After your late tossing on the breaking seas?

K. Rich. Needs must I like it well: I weep for joy
To stand upon my kingdom once again.

Dear earth, I do salute thee with my hand,
Though rebels wound thee with their horses' hoofs:
As a long-parted mother with her child
Plays fondly with her tears and smiles in meeting,
So, weeping, smiling, greet I thee, my earth, 10
And do thee favours with my royal hands.
Feed not thy sovereign's foe, my gentle earth,
Nor with thy sweets comfort his ravenous sense;
But let thy spiders, that suck up thy venom,
And heavy-gaited toads lie in their way,
Doing annoyance to the treacherous feet
Which with usurping steps do trample thee:
Yield stinging nettles to mine enemies;
And when they from thy bosom pluck a flower,
Guard it, I pray thee, with a lurking adder 20
Whose double tongue may with a mortal touch
Throw death upon thy sovereign's enemies.
Mock not my senseless conjuration, lords:
This earth shall have a feeling and these stones
Prove armed soldiers, ere her native king
Shall falter under foul rebellion's arms.

Car. Fear not, my lord: that Power that made you king
Hath power to keep you king in spite of all.
The means that heaven yields must be embraced,
And not neglected; else, if heaven would, 30
And we will not, heaven's offer we refuse,
The proffer'd means of succour and redress.

Aum. He means, my lord, that we are too remiss;
Whilst Bolingbroke, through our security,
Grows strong and great in substance and in power.

K. Rich. Discomfortable cousin! know'st thou not
That when the searching eye of heaven is hid,
Behind the globe, and lights the lower world,
Then thieves and robbers range abroad unseen
In murders and in outrage, boldly here; 40
But when from under this terrestrial ball

He fires the proud tops of the eastern pines
And darts his light through every guilty hole,
Then murders, treasons and detested sins,
The cloak of night being pluck'd from off their backs,
Stand bare and naked, trembling at themselves?
So when this thief, this traitor, Bolingbroke,
Who all this while hath revell'd in the night
Whilst we were wandering with the antipodes,
Shall see us rising in our throne, the east, 50
His treasons will sit blushing in his face,
Not able to endure the sight of day,
But self-affrighted tremble at his sin.
Not all the water in the rough rude sea
Can wash the balm off from an anointed king;
The breath of worldly men cannot depose
The deputy elected by the Lord:
For every man that Bolingbroke hath press'd
To lift shrewd steel against our golden crown,
God for his Richard hath in heavenly pay 60
A glorious angel: then, if angels fight,
Weak men must fall, for heaven still guards the right.

Enter SALISBURY.

Welcome, my lord: how far off lies your power?
Sal. Nor near nor farther off, my gracious lord,
Than this weak arm: discomfort guides my tongue
And bids me speak of nothing but despair.
One day too late, I fear me, noble lord,
Hath clouded all thy happy days on earth:
O, call back yesterday, bid time return,
And thou shalt have twelve thousand fighting men! 70
To-day, to-day, unhappy day, too late,
O'erthrows thy joys, friends, fortune and thy state:
For all the Welshmen, hearing thou wert dead,
Are gone to Bolingbroke, dispersed and fled.
Aum. Comfort, my liege: why looks your grace so pale?

K. Rich. But now the blood of twenty thousand men
Did triumph in my face, and they are fled ;
And, till so much blood thither come again,
Have I not reason to look pale and dead ?
All souls that will be safe fly from my side, 80
For time hath set a blot upon my pride.

Aum. Comfort, my liege ; remember who you are.

K. Rich. I had forgot myself : am I not king ?
Awake, thou sluggard majesty ! thou sleepest.
Is not the king's name twenty thousand names ?
Arm, arm, my name ! a puny subject strikes
At thy great glory. Look not to the ground,
Ye favourites of a king : are we not high ?
High be our thoughts : I know my uncle York 89
Hath power enough to serve our turn. But who comes here ?

Enter SCROOP.

Scroop. More health and happiness betide my liege
Than can my care-tuned tongue deliver him !

K. Rich. Mine ear is open and my heart prepared :
The worst is worldly loss thou canst unfold.
Say, is my kingdom lost ? why, 'twas my care ;
And what loss is it to be rid of care ?
Strives Bolingbroke to be as great as we ?
Greater he shall not be ; if he serve God,
We 'll serve Him too and be his fellow so :
Revolt our subjects ? that we cannot mend ; 100
They break their faith to God as well as us :
Cry woe, destruction, ruin, loss, decay ;
The worst is death, and death will have his day.

Scroop. Glad am I that your highness is so arm'd
To bear the tidings of calamity.
Like an unseasonable stormy day,
Which makes the silver rivers drown their shores,
As if the world were all dissolved to tears,
So high above his limits swells the rage

Of Bolingbroke, covering your fearful land 110
With hard bright steel and hearts harder than steel.
White-beards have arm'd their thin and hairless scalps
Against thy majesty ; boys, with women's voices,
Strive to speak big and clap their female joints
In stiff unwieldy arms against thy crown :
Thy very beadsmen learn to bend their bows
Of double-fatal yew against thy state ;
Yea, distaff-women manage usty bills
Against thy state : both young and old rebel,
And all goes worse than I have power to tell. 120

K. Rich. Too well, too well thou tell'st a tale so ill.
Where is the Earl of Wiltshire ? where is Bagot ?
What has become of Bushy ? where is Green ?
That they have let the dangerous enemy
Measure our confines with such peaceful steps ?
If we prevail, their heads shall pay for it :
I warrant they have made peace with Bolingbroke.

Scroop. Peace have they made with him indeed, my lord.

K. Rich. O villains, vipers, damn'd without redemption !
Dogs, easily won to fawn on any man ! 130
Snakes, in my heart-blood warm'd, that sting my heart !
Three Judases, each one thrice worse than Judas !
Would they make peace ? terrible hell make war
Upon their spotted souls for this offence !

Scroop. Sweet love, I see, changing his property,
Turns to the sourest and most deadly hate :
Again uncurse their souls ; their peace is made
With heads, and not with hands : those whom you curse
Have felt the worst of death's destroying wound
And lie full low, graved in the hollow ground. 140

Aum. Is Bushy, Green, and the Earl of Wiltshire dead ?

Scroop. Ay, all of them at Bristol lost their heads.

Aum. Where is the duke my father with his power ?

K. Rich. No matter where ; of comfort no man speak :
Let's talk of graves, of worms and epitaphs ;

Make dust our paper and with rainy eyes
Write sorrow on the bosom of the earth,
Let 's choose executors and talk of wills :
And yet not so, for what can we bequeath
Save our deposed bodies to the ground ? 150
Our lands, our lives and all are Bolingbroke's,
And nothing can we call our own but death
And that small model of the barren earth
Which serves as paste and cover to our bones.
For God's sake, let us sit upon the ground
And tell sad stories of the death of kings :
How some have been deposed ; some slain in war ;
Some haunted by the ghosts they have deposed ;
Some poison'd by their wives ; some sleeping kill'd ;
All murder'd : for within the hollow crown 160
That rounds the mortal temples of a king
Keeps Death his court and there the antic sits,
Scoffing his state and grinning at his pomp,
Allowing him a breath, a little scene,
To monarchize, be fear'd and kill with looks,
Infusing him with self and vain conceit,
As if this flesh which walls about our life
Were brass impregnable, and humour'd thus
Comes at the last and with a little pin
Bores through his castle wall, and farewell king ! 170
Cover your heads and mock not flesh and blood
With solemn reverence : throw away respect,
Tradition, form and ceremonious duty,
For you have but mistook me all this while :
I live with bread like you, feel want,
Taste grief, need friends : subjected thus,
How can you say to me, I am a king ?

Car. My lord, wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes,
But presently prevent the ways to wail.
To fear the foe, since fear oppresseth strength, 180
Gives in your weakness strength unto your foe,

And so your follies fight against yourself.
Fear, and be slain; no worse can come to fight:
And fight and die is death destroying death;
Where fearing dying pays death servile breath.
Aum. My father hath a power; inquire of him,
And learn to make a body of a limb.
K. Rich. Thou chid'st me well: proud Bolingbroke, I come
To change blows with thee for our day of doom.
This ague fit of fear is over-blown; 190
An easy task it is to win our own.
Say, Scroop, where lies our uncle with his power?
Speak sweetly, man, although thy looks be sour.
Scroop. Men judge by the complexion of the sky
The state and inclination of the day:
So may you by my dull and heavy eye,
My tongue hath but a heavier tale to say.
I play the torturer, by small and small
To lengthen out the worst that must be spoken:
Your uncle York is join'd with Bolingbroke, 200
And all your northern castles yielded up,
And all your southern gentlemen in arms
Upon his party.
K. Rich. Thou hast said enough.
Beshrew thee, cousin, which didst lead me forth
[*To Aumerle.*
Of that sweet way I was in to despair!
What say you now? what comfort have we now?
By heaven, I'll hate him everlastingly
That bids me be of comfort any more.
Go to Flint castle: there I'll pine away;
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey. 210
That power I have, discharge; and let them go
To ear the land that hath some hope to grow,
For I have none: let no man speak again
To alter this, for counsel is but vain.
Aum. My liege, one word.

K. Rich. He does me double wrong
That wounds me with the flatteries of his tongue.
Discharge my followers: let them hence away,
From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *Wales. Before Flint castle.*

Enter, with drum and colours, BOLINGBROKE, YORK, NORTHUMBERLAND, Attendants, *and forces.*

Boling. So that by this intelligence we learn
The Welshmen are dispersed, and Salisbury
Is gone to meet the king, who lately landed
With some few private friends upon this coast.
North. The news is very fair and good, my lord:
Richard not far from hence hath hid his head.
York. It would beseem the Lord Northumberland
To say 'King Richard:' alack the heavy day
When such a sacred king should hide his head.
North. Your grace mistakes; only to be brief, 10
Left I his title out.
York. The time hath been,
Would you have been so brief with him, he would
Have been so brief with you, to shorten you,
For taking so the head, your whole head's length.
Boling. Mistake not, uncle, further than you should.
York. Take not, good cousin, further than you should,
Lest you mistake the heavens are o'er our heads.
Boling. I know it, uncle, and oppose not myself
Against their will. But who comes here?

Enter PERCY.

Welcome, Harry: what, will not this castle yield? 20
Percy. The castle royally is mann'd, my lord,
Against thy entrance.
Boling. Royally!

Why, it contains no king?
Percy. Yes, my good lord,
It doth contain a king; King Richard lies
Within the limits of yon lime and stone:
And with him are the Lord Aumerle, Lord Salisbury,
Sir Stephen Scroop, besides a clergyman
Of holy reverence; who, I cannot learn.
North. O, belike it is the Bishop of Carlisle. 30
Boling. Noble lords,
Go to the rude ribs of that most ancient castle;
Through brazen trumpet send the breath of parley
Into his ruin'd ears, and thus deliver:
Henry Bolingbroke
On both his knees doth kiss King Richard's hand
And sends allegiance and true faith of heart
To his most royal person, hither come
Even at his feet to lay my arms and power,
Provided that my banishment repeal'd 40
And lands restored again be freely granted:
If not, I'll use the advantage of my power
And lay the summer's dust with showers of blood
Rain'd from the wounds of slaughter'd Englishmen:
The which, how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke
It is, such crimson tempest should bedrench
The fresh green lap of fair King Richard's land,
My stooping duty tenderly shall show.
Go, signify as much, while here we march
Upon the grassy carpet of this plain. 50
Let's march without the noise of threatening drum,
That from this castle's tatter'd battlements
Our fair appointments may be well perused.
Methinks King Richard and myself should meet
With no less terror than the elements
Of fire and water, when their thundering shock
At meeting tears the cloudy cheeks of heaven.
Be he the fire, I'll be the yielding water:

The rage be his, whilst on the earth I rain
My waters ; on the earth, and not on him. 60
March on, and mark King Richard how he looks.

Parle without, and answer within. Then a flourish. Enter on the walls, KING RICHARD, *the* BISHOP OF CARLISLE, AUMERLE, SCROOP, *and* SALISBURY.

See, see, King Richard doth himself appear,
As doth the blushing discontented sun
From out the fiery portal of the east,
When he perceives the envious clouds are bent
To dim his glory and to stain the track
Of his bright passage to the occident.
York. Yet looks he like a king : behold his eye,
As bright as is the eagle's, lightens forth
Controlling majesty : alack, alack, for woe, 70
That any harm should stain so fair a show !
K. Rich. We are amazed ; and thus long have we stood
To watch the fearful bending of thy knee, [*To North.*
Because we thought ourself thy lawful king :
And if we be, how dare thy joints forget
To pay their awful duty to our presence ?
If we be not, show us the hand of God
That hath dismiss'd us from our stewardship ;
For well we know, no hand of blood and bone
Can gripe the sacred handle of our sceptre, 80
Unless he do profane, steal, or usurp.
And though you think that all, as you have done,
Have torn their souls by turning them from us,
And we are barren and bereft of friends ;
Yet know, my master, God omnipotent,
Is mustering in his clouds on your behalf
Armies of pestilence ; and they shall strike
Your children yet unborn and unbegot,
That lift your vassal hands against my head
And threat the glory of my precious crown. 90

Tell Bolingbroke—for yond methinks he stands—
That every stride he makes upon my land
Is dangerous treason : he is come to open
The purple testament of bleeding war ;
But ere the crown he looks for live in peace,
Ten thousand bloody crowns of mothers' sons
Shall ill become the flower of England's face,
Change the complexion of her maid-pale peace
To scarlet indignation, and bedew
Her pastures' grass with faithful English blood. 100

North. The king of heaven forbid our lord the king
Should so with civil and uncivil arms
Be rush'd upon ! Thy thrice noble cousin
Harry Bolingbroke doth humbly kiss thy hand ;
And by the honourable tomb he swears,
That stands upon your royal grandsire's bones,
And by the royalties of both your bloods,
Currents that spring from one most gracious head,
And by the buried hand of warlike Gaunt,
And by the worth and honour of himself, 110
Comprising all that may be sworn or said,
His coming hither hath no further scope
Than for his lineal loyalties and to beg
Enfranchisement immediate on his knees :
Which on thy royal party granted once,
His glittering arms he will commend to rust,
His barbed steeds to stables, and his heart
To faithful service of your majesty.
This swears he, as he is a prince, is just ;
And, as I am a gentleman, I credit him. 120

K. Rich. Northumberland, say thus the king returns :
His noble cousin is right welcome hither ;
And all the number of his fair demands
Shall be accomplish'd without contradiction :
With all the gracious utterance thou hast
Speak to his gentle hearing kind commends.

We do debase ourselves, cousin, do we not, [*To Aumerle.*
To look so poorly and to speak so fair?
Shall we call back Northumberland, and send
Defiance to the traitor, and so die? 130

Aum. No, good my lord; let's fight with gentle words
Till time lend friends and friends their helpful swords.

K. Rich. O God, O God! that e'er this tongue of mine,
That laid the sentence of dread banishment
On yon proud man, should take it off again
With words of sooth! O that I were as great
As is my grief, or lesser than my name!
Or that I could forget what I have been,
Or not remember what I must be now!
Swell'st thou, proud heart? I'll give thee scope to beat,
Since foes have scope to beat both thee and me. 141

Aum. Northumberland comes back from Bolingbroke.

K. Rich. What must the king do now? must he submit?
The king shall do it: must he be deposed?
The king shall be contented: must he lose
The name of king? o' God's name, let it go:
I'll give my jewels for a set of beads,
My gorgeous palace for a hermitage,
My gay apparel for an almsman's gown,
My figured goblets for a dish of wood, 150
My sceptre for a palmer's walking-staff,
My subjects for a pair of carved saints
And my large kingdom for a little grave,
A little little grave, an obscure grave;
Or I'll be buried in the king's highway,
Some way of common trade, where subjects' feet
May hourly trample on their sovereign's head;
For on my heart they tread now whilst I live;
And buried once, why not upon my head?
Aumerle, thou weep'st, my tender-hearted cousin! 160
We'll make foul weather with despised tears;
Our sighs and they shall lodge the summer corn,

And make a dearth in this revolting land.
Or shall we play the wantons with our woes,
And make some pretty match with shedding tears?
As thus, to drop them still upon one place,
Till they have fretted us a pair of graves
Within the earth; and, therein laid,—there lies
Two kinsmen digg'd their graves with weeping eyes.
Would not this ill do well? Well, well, I see 170
I talk but idly, and you laugh at me.
Most mighty prince, my Lord Northumberland,
What says King Bolingbroke? will his majesty
Give Richard leave to live till Richard die?
You make a leg, and Bolingbroke says ay.

North. My lord, in the base court he doth attend
To speak with you; may it please you to come down.

K. Rich. Down, down I come; like glistering Phaethon,
Wanting the manage of unruly jades.
In the base court? Base court, where kings grow base, 180
To come at traitors' calls and do them grace.
In the base court? Come down? Down, court! down, king!
For night-owls shriek where mounting larks should sing.
[*Exeunt from above.*

Boling. What says his majesty?

North. Sorrow and grief of heart
Makes him speak fondly, like a frantic man:
Yet he is come.

Enter KING RICHARD *and his attendants below.*

Boling. Stand all apart,
And show fair duty to his majesty. [*He kneels down.*
My gracious lord,—

K. Rich. Fair cousin, you debase your princely knee 190
To make the base earth proud with kissing it:
Me rather had my heart might feel your love

Than my unpleased eye see your courtesy.
Up, cousin, up; your heart is up, I know,
Thus high at least, although your knee be low.
Boling. My gracious lord, I come but for mine own.
K. Rich. Your own is yours, and I am yours, and all.
Boling. So far be mine, my most redoubted lord,
As my true service shall deserve your love.
K. Rich. Well you deserve: they well deserve to have,
That know the strong'st and surest way to get. 201
Uncle, give me your hands: nay, dry your eyes;
Tears show their love, but want their remedies.
Cousin, I am too young to be your father,
Though you are old enough to be my heir.
What you will have, I'll give, and willing too;
For do we must what force will have us do.
Set on towards London, cousin, is it so?
Boling. Yea, my good lord.
K. Rich. Then I must not say no.
[*Flourish. Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *Langley. The* DUKE OF YORK'S *garden.*

Enter the QUEEN *and two* Ladies.

Queen. What sport shall we devise here in this garden,
To drive away the heavy thought of care?
Lady. Madam, we'll play at bowls.
Queen. 'Twill make me think the world is full of rubs,
And that my fortune runs against the bias.
Lady. Madam, we'll dance.
Queen. My legs can keep no measure in delight,
When my poor heart no measure keeps in grief:
Therefore, no dancing, girl; some other sport.
Lady. Madam, we'll tell tales. 10
Queen. Of sorrow or of joy?

Lady. Of either, madam.
Queen. Of neither, girl :
For if of joy, being altogether wanting,
It doth remember me the more of sorrow ;
Or if of grief, being altogether had,
It adds more sorrow to my want of joy :
For what I have I need not to repeat ;
And what I want it boots not to complain.
Lady. Madam, I 'll sing.
Queen. 'Tis well that thou hast cause ;
But thou shouldst please me better, wouldst thou weep. 20
Lady. I could weep, madam, would it do you good.
Queen. And I could sing, would weeping do me good,
And never borrow any tear of thee.

Enter a Gardener, *and two* Servants

But stay, here come the gardeners :
Let 's step into the shadow of these trees.
My wretchedness unto a row of pins,
They 'll talk of state ; for every one doth so
Against a change ; woe is forerun with woe.
[*Queen and Ladies retire.*
Gard. Go, bind thou up yon dangling apricocks,
Which, like unruly children, make their sire 30
Stoop with oppression of their prodigal weight :
Give some supportance to the bending twigs.
Go thou, and like an executioner,
Cut off the heads of too fast growing sprays,
That look too lofty in our commonwealth :
All must be even in our government.
You thus employ'd I will go root away
The noisome weeds, which without profit suck
The soil's fertility from wholesome flowers.
Serv. Why should we in the compass of a pale 40
Keep law and form and due proportion,

Showing, as in a model, our firm estate,
When our sea-wall'd garden, the whole land,
Is full of weeds, her fairest flowers choked up,
Her fruit-trees all unpruned, her hedges ruin'd,
Her knots disorder'd and her wholesome herbs
Swarming with caterpillars?

Gard. Hold thy peace:
He that hath suffer'd this disorder'd spring
Hath now himself met with the fall of leaf:
The weeds which his broad-spreading leaves did shelter, 50
That seem'd in eating him to hold him up,
Are pluck'd up root and all by Bolingbroke,
I mean the Earl of Wiltshire, Bushy, Green.

Serv. What, are they dead?

Gard. They are; and Bolingbroke
Hath seized the wasteful king. O, what pity is it
That he had not so trimm'd and dress'd his land
As we this garden! We at time of year
Do wound the bark, the skin of our fruit-trees,
Lest, being over-proud in sap and blood,
With too much riches it confound itself: 60
Had he done so to great and growing men,
They might have lived to bear and he to taste
Their fruits of duty: superfluous branches
We lop away, that bearing boughs may live:
Had he done so, himself had borne the crown,
Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down.

Serv. What, think you then the king shall be deposed?

Gard. Depress'd he is already, and deposed
'Tis doubt he will be: letters came last night
To a dear friend of the good Duke of York's, 70
That tell black tidings.

Queen. O, I am press'd to death through want of speaking!
[*Coming forward.*
Thou, old Adam's likeness, set to dress this garden,
How dares thy harsh rude tongue sound this unpleasing news?

What Eve, what serpent, hath suggested thee
To make a second fall of cursed man?
Why dost thou say King Richard is deposed?
Darest thou, thou little better thing than earth,
Divine his downfal? Say, where, when, and how,
Cam'st thou by this ill tidings? speak, thou wretch. 80

Gard. Pardon me, madam: little joy have I
To breathe this news; yet what I say is true.
King Richard, he is in the mighty hold
Of Bolingbroke: their fortunes both are weigh'd:
In your lord's scale is nothing but himself,
And some few vanities that make him light;
But in the balance of great Bolingbroke,
Besides himself, are all the English peers,
And with that odds he weighs King Richard down.
Post you to London, and you will find it so; 90
I speak no more than every one doth know.

Queen. Nimble mischance, that art so light of foot,
Doth not thy embassage belong to me,
And am I last that knows it? O, thou think'st
To serve me last, that I may longest keep
Thy sorrow in my breast. Come, ladies, go,
To meet at London London's king in woe.
What, was I born to this, that my sad look
Should grace the triumph of great Bolingbroke?
Gardener, for telling me these news of woe, 100
Pray God the plants thou graft'st may never grow.

[*Exeunt Queen and Ladies.*

Gard. Poor queen! so that thy state might be no worse,
I would my skill were subject to thy curse.
Here did she fall a tear; here in this place
I'll set a bank of rue, sour herb of grace:
Rue, even for ruth, here shortly shall be seen,
In the remembrance of a weeping queen. [*Exeunt.*

ACT IV.

SCENE I. *Westminster Hall.*

Enter, as to the Parliament, BOLINGBROKE, AUMERLE, NORTHUMBERLAND, PERCY, FITZWATER, SURREY, *the* BISHOP OF CARLISLE, *the* ABBOT OF WESTMINSTER, *and another* Lord, Herald, Officers, *and* BAGOT.

Boling. Call forth Bagot.
Now, Bagot, freely speak thy mind;
What thou dost know of noble Gloucester's death,
Who wrought it with the king, and who perform'd
The bloody office of his timeless end.
Bagot. Then set before my face the Lord Aumerle.
Boling. Cousin, stand forth, and look upon that man.
Bagot. My Lord Aumerle, I know your daring tongue
Scorns to unsay what once it hath deliver'd.
In that dead time when Gloucester's death was plotted, 10
I heard you say, 'Is not my arm of length,
That reacheth from the restful English court
As far as Calais to mine uncle's head?'
Amongst much other talk, that very time,
I heard you say that you had rather refuse
The offer of an hundred thousand crowns
Than Bolingbroke's return to England;
Adding withal, how blest this land would be
In this your cousin's death.
Aum. Princes and noble lords,
What answer shall I make to this base man? 20
Shall I so much dishonour my fair stars,
On equal terms to give him chastisement?
Either I must, or have mine honour soil'd
With the attainder of his slanderous lips.
There is my gage, the manual seal of death,
That marks thee out for hell: I say, thou liest,

And will maintain what thou hast said is false
In thy heart-blood, though being all too base
To stain the temper of my knightly sword.
Bolingbroke. Bagot, forbear; thou shalt not take it up. 30
Aumerle. Excepting one, I would he were the best
In all this presence that hath moved me so.
Fitz. If that thy valour stand on sympathy,
There is my gage, Aumerle, in gage to thine:
By that fair sun which shows me where thou stand'st,
I heard thee say, and vauntingly thou spakest it,
That thou wert cause of noble Gloucester's death.
If thou deny'st it twenty times, thou liest;
And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,
Where it was forged, with my rapier's point. 40
Aumerle. Thou darest not, coward, live to see that day.
Fitz. Now, by my soul, I would it were this hour.
Aumerle. Fitzwater, thou art damn'd to hell for this.
Percy. Aumerle, thou liest; his honour is as true
In this appeal as thou art all unjust;
And that thou art so, there I throw my gage,
To prove it on thee to the extremest point
Of mortal breathing: seize it, if thou darest.
Aumerle. An if I do not, may my hands rot off
And never brandish more revengeful steel 50
Over the glittering helmet of my foe!
Another Lord. I task the earth to the like, forsworn Aumerle;
And spur thee on with full as many lies
As may be holloa'd in thy treacherous ear
From sun to sun: there is my honour's pawn;
Engage it to the trial, if thou darest.
Aumerle. Who sets me else? by heaven, I'll throw at all:
I have a thousand spirits in one breast,
To answer twenty thousand such as you.
Surrey. My Lord Fitzwater, I do remember well 60
The very time Aumerle and you did talk.

Fitz. 'Tis very true: you were in presence then;
And you can witness with me this is true.
Surrey. As false, by heaven, as heaven itself is true.
Fitz. Surrey, thou liest.
Surrey. Dishonourable boy!
That lie shall lie so heavy on my sword,
That it shall render vengeance and revenge
Till thou the lie-giver and that lie do lie
In earth as quiet as thy father's skull:
In proof whereof, there is my honour's pawn; 70
Engage it to the trial, if thou darest.
Fitz. How fondly dost thou spur a forward horse!
If I dare eat, or drink, or breathe, or live,
I dare meet Surrey in a wilderness,
And spit upon him, whilst I say he lies,
And lies, and lies: there is my bond of faith,
To tie thee to my strong correction.
As I intend to thrive in this new world,
Aumerle is guilty of my true appeal:
Besides, I heard the banish'd Norfolk say 80
That thou, Aumerle, didst send two of thy men
To execute the noble duke at Calais.
Aum. Some honest Christian trust me with a gage,
That Norfolk lies: here do I throw down this,
If he may be repeal'd, to try his honour.
Boling. These differences shall all rest under gage
Till Norfolk be repeal'd: repeal'd he shall be,
And, though mine enemy, restored again
To all his lands and signories: when he's return'd,
Against Aumerle we will enforce his trial. 90
Car. That honourable day shall ne'er be seen.
Many a time hath banish'd Norfolk fought
For Jesu Christ in glorious Christian field,
Streaming the ensign of the Christian cross
Against black pagans, Turks, and Saracens;
And toil'd with works of war, retired himself

To Italy ; and there at Venice gave
His body to that pleasant country's earth,
And his pure soul unto his captain Christ,
Under whose colours he had fought so long. 100

Boling. Why, bishop, is Norfolk dead ?

Car. As surely as I live, my lord.

Boling. Sweet peace conduct his sweet soul to the bosom
Of good old Abraham ! Lords appellants,
Your differences shall all rest under gage
Till we assign you to your days of trial.

Enter YORK, *attended.*

York. Great Duke of Lancaster, I come to thee
From plume-pluck'd Richard ; who with willing soul
Adopts thee heir, and his high sceptre yields
To the possession of thy royal hand : 110
Ascend his throne, descending now from him ;
And long live Henry, fourth of that name !

Boling. In God's name, I 'll ascend the regal throne.

Car. Marry, God forbid !
Worst in this royal presence may I speak,
Yet best beseeming me to speak the truth.
Would God that any in this noble presence
Were enough noble to be upright judge
Of noble Richard ! then true noblesse would
Learn him forbearance from so foul a wrong. 120
What subject can give sentence on his king ?
And who sits here that is not Richard's subject ?
Thieves are not judged but they are by to hear,
Although apparent guilt be seen in them ;
And shall the figure of God's majesty,
His captain, steward, deputy-elect,
Anointed, crowned, planted many years,
Be judged by subject and inferior breath,
And he himself not present ? O, forfend it, God,
That in a Christian climate souls refined 130

Should show so heinous, black, obscene a deed !
I speak to subjects, and a subject speaks,
Stirr'd up by God, thus boldly for his king.
My Lord of Hereford here, whom you call king,
Is a foul traitor to proud Hereford's king :
And if you crown him, let me prophesy :
The blood of English shall manure the ground,
And future ages groan for this foul act ;
Peace shall go sleep with Turks and infidels,
And in this seat of peace tumultuous wars 140
Shall kin with kin and kind with kind confound ;
Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny
Shall here inhabit, and this land be call'd
The field of Golgotha and dead men's skulls.
O, if you raise this house against this house,
It will the woefullest division prove
That ever fell upon this cursed earth.
Prevent, resist it, let it not be so,
Lest child, child's children, cry against you 'woe !'

North. Well have you argued, sir ; and for your pains, 150
Of capital treason we arrest you here.
My Lord of Westminster, be it your charge
To keep him safely till his day of trial.
May it please you, lords, to grant the commons' suit.

Boling. Fetch hither Richard, that in common view
He may surrender ; so we shall proceed
Without suspicion.

York. I will be his conduct. [*Exit.*

Boling. Lords, you that here are under our arrest,
Procure your sureties for your days of answer.
Little are we beholding to your love, 160
And little look'd for at your helping hands.

Re-enter York, *with* Richard, *and* Officers, *bearing the regalia.*

K. Rich. Alack, why am I sent for to a king,

Before I have shook off the regal thoughts
Wherewith I reign'd? I hardly yet have learn'd
To insinuate, flatter, bow, and bend my limbs:
Give sorrow leave awhile to tutor me
To this submission. Yet I well remember
The favours of these men: were they not mine?
Did they not sometime cry, 'all hail!' to me?
So Judas did to Christ: but he, in twelve, 170
Found truth in all but one; I, in twelve thousand, none.
God save the king! Will no man say amen?
Am I both priest and clerk? well then, amen.
God save the king! although I be not he;
And yet, amen, if heaven do think him me.
To do what service am I sent for hither?
York. To do that office of thine own good will
Which tired majesty did make thee offer,
The resignation of thy state and crown
To Henry Bolingbroke. 180
K. Rich. Give me the crown. Here, cousin, seize the crown;
Here, cousin;
On this side my hand, and on that side yours.
Now is this golden crown like a deep well
That owes two buckets, filling one another,
The emptier ever dancing in the air,
The other down, unseen and full of water:
That bucket down and full of tears am I,
Drinking my griefs, whilst you mount up on high.
Boling. I thought you had been willing to resign. 190
K. Rich. My crown I am; but still my griefs are mine:
You may my glories and my state depose,
But not my griefs; still am I king of those.
Boling. Part of your cares you give me with your crown.
K. Rich. Your cares set up do not pluck my cares down.
My care is loss of care, by old care done;

Your care is gain of care, by new care won :
The cares I give I have, though given away ;
They tend the crown, yet still with me they stay.
Boling. Are you contented to resign the crown ? 200
K. Rich. Ay, no ; no, ay ; for I must nothing be ;
Therefore no no, for I resign to thee.
Now mark me, how I will undo myself :
I give this heavy weight from off my head
And this unwieldy sceptre from my hand,
The pride of kingly sway from out my heart ;
With mine own tears I wash away my balm,
With mine own hands I give away my crown,
With mine own tongue deny my sacred state,
With mine own breath release all duty's rites : 210
All pomp and majesty I do forswear ;
My manors, rents, revenues I forgo ;
My acts, decrees, and statutes I deny :
God pardon all oaths that are broke to me !
God keep all vows unbroke that swear to thee !
Make me, that nothing have, with nothing grieved,
And thou with all pleased, that hast all achieved !
Long mayst thou live in Richard's seat to sit,
And soon lie Richard in an earthy pit !
God save King Harry, unking'd Richard says, 220
And send him many years of sunshine days !
What more remains ?
North. No more, but that you read
These accusations and these grievous crimes
Committed by your person and your followers
Against the state and profit of this land ;
That, by confessing them, the souls of men
May deem that you are worthily deposed.
K. Rich. Must I do so ? and must I ravel out
My weaved-up folly ? Gentle Northumberland,
If thy offences were upon record, 230
Would it not shame thee in so fair a troop

To read a lecture of them? If thou wouldst,
There shouldst thou find one heinous article,
Containing the deposing of a king
And cracking the strong warrant of an oath,
Mark'd with a blot, damn'd in the book of heaven:
Nay, all of you that stand and look upon,
Whilst that my wretchedness doth bait myself,
Though some of you with Pilate wash your hands
Showing an outward pity; yet you Pilates 240
Have here deliver'd me to my sour cross,
And water cannot wash away your sin.

North. My lord, dispatch; read o'er these articles.

K. Rich. Mine eyes are full of tears, I cannot see:
And yet salt water blinds them not so much
But they can see a sort of traitors here.
Nay, if I turn mine eyes upon myself,
I find myself a traitor with the rest;
For I have given here my soul's consent
To undeck the pompous body of a king; 250
Made glory base and sovereignty a slave,
Proud majesty a subject, state a peasant.

North. My lord,—

K. Rich. No lord of thine, thou haught insulting man,
Nor no man's lord; I have no name, no title,
No, not that name was given me at the font,
But 'tis usurp'd: alack the heavy day,
That I have worn so many winters out,
And know not now what name to call myself!
O that I were a mockery king of snow, 260
Standing before the sun of Bolingbroke,
To melt myself away in water-drops!
Good king, great king, and yet not greatly good,
An if my word be sterling yet in England,
Let it command a mirror hither straight,
That it may show me what a face I have,
Since it is bankrupt of his majesty.

Boling. Go some of you and fetch a looking-glass.
[*Exit an attendant.*
North. Read o'er this paper while the glass doth come.
K. Rich. Fiend, thou torment'st me ere I come to hell!
Boling. Urge it no more, my Lord Northumberland. 271
North. The commons will not then be satisfied.
K. Rich. They shall be satisfied: I'll read enough,
When I do see the very book indeed
Where all my sins are writ, and that's myself.

Re-enter Attendant, *with a glass.*

Give me the glass, and therein will I read.
No deeper wrinkles yet? hath sorrow struck
So many blows upon this face of mine,
And made no deeper wounds? O flattering glass,
Like to my followers in prosperity, 280
Thou dost beguile me! Was this face the face
That every day under this household roof
Did keep ten thousand men? was this the face
That, like the sun, did make beholders wink?
Was this the face that faced so many follies,
And was at last out-faced by Bolingbroke?
A brittle glory shineth in this face:
As brittle as the glory is the face;
[*Dashes the glass against the ground.*
For there it is, crack'd in a hundred shivers.
Mark, silent king, the moral of this sport, 290
How soon my sorrow hath destroy'd my face.
Boling. The shadow of your sorrow hath destroy'd
The shadow of your face.
K. Rich. Say that again.
The shadow of my sorrow! ha! let's see:
'Tis very true, my grief lies all within;
And these external manners of laments
Are merely shadows to the unseen grief
That swells with silence in the tortured soul;

There lies the substance : and I thank thee, king,
For thy great bounty, that not only givest 300
Me cause to wail but teachest me the way
How to lament the cause. I'll beg one boon,
And then be gone and trouble you no more.
Shall I obtain it?

Boling. Name it, fair cousin.

K. Rich. 'Fair cousin'? I am greater than a king :
For when I was a king, my flatterers
Were then but subjects ; being now a subject,
I have a king here to my flatterer.
Being so great, I have no need to beg.

Boling. Yet ask. 310

K. Rich. And shall I have?

Boling. You shall.

K. Rich. Then give me leave to go.

Boling. Whither?

K. Rich. Whither you will, so I were from your sights.

Boling. Go, some of you convey him to the Tower.

K. Rich. O, good! convey? conveyers are you all,
That rise thus nimbly by a true king's fall.

[*Exeunt King Richard, some Lords, and a Guard.*

Boling. On Wednesday next we solemnly set down
Our coronation : lords, prepare yourselves. 320

[*Exeunt all except the Bishop of Carlisle, the Abbot of Westminster, and Aumerle.*

Abbot. A woeful pageant have we here beheld.

Car. The woe's to come ; the children yet unborn
Shall feel this day as sharp to them as thorn.

Aum. You holy clergymen, is there no plot
To rid the realm of this pernicious blot.

Abbot. My lord,
Before I freely speak my mind herein,
You shall not only take the sacrament
To bury mine intents, but also to effect
Whatever I shall happen to devise. 330

I see your brows are full of discontent,
Your hearts of sorrow and your eyes of tears :
Come home with me to supper ; and I'll lay
A plot shall show us all a merry day. [*Exeunt.*

ACT V.

SCENE I. *London. A street leading to the Tower.*

Enter QUEEN *and* Ladies.

Queen. This way the king will come ; this is the way
To Julius Cæsar's ill-erected tower,
To whose flint bosom my condemned lord
Is doom'd a prisoner by proud Bolingbroke :
Here let us rest, if this rebellious earth
Have any resting for her true king's queen.

Enter RICHARD *and* Guard.

But soft, but see, or rather do not see,
My fair rose wither : yet look up, behold,
That you in pity may dissolve to dew,
And wash him fresh again with true-love tears. 10
Ah, thou, the model where old Troy did stand,
Thou map of honour, thou King Richard's tomb,
And not King Richard ; thou most beauteous inn,
Why should hard-favour'd grief be lodged in thee,
When triumph is become an alehouse guest ?

K. Rich. Join not with grief, fair woman, do not so,
To make my end too sudden : learn, good soul,
To think our former state a happy dream ;
From which awaked, the truth of what we are
Shows us but this : I am sworn brother, sweet, 20
To grim Necessity, and he and I
Will keep a league till death. Hie thee to France
And cloister thee in some religious house :

Our holy lives must win a new world's crown,
Which our profane hours here have stricken down.

Queen. What, is my Richard both in shape and mind
Transform'd and weaken'd? hath Bolingbroke deposed
Thine intellect? hath he been in thy heart?
The lion dying thrusteth forth his paw,
And wounds the earth, if nothing else, with rage 30
To be o'erpower'd; and wilt thou, pupil-like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility,
Which art a lion and a king of beasts?

K. Rich. A king of beasts, indeed; if aught but beasts,
I had been still a happy king of men.
Good sometime queen, prepare thee hence for France:
Think I am dead and that even here thou takest,
As from my death-bed, thy last living leave.
In winter's tedious nights sit by the fire 40
With good old folks and let them tell the tales
Of woeful ages long ago betid;
And ere thou bid good night, to quit their griefs,
Tell thou the lamentable tale of me
And send the hearers weeping to their beds:
For why the senseless brands will sympathize
The heavy accent of thy moving tongue
And in compassion weep the fire out;
And some will mourn in ashes, some coal-black,
For the deposing of a rightful king. 50

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND *and* others.

North. My lord, the mind of Bolingbroke is changed;
You must to Pomfret, not unto the tower.
And, madam, there is order ta'en for you;
With all swift speed you must away to France.

K. Rich. Northumberland, thou ladder wherewithal
The mounting Bolingbroke ascends my throne,
The time shall not be many hours of age

More than it is ere foul sin gathering head
Shall break into corruption : thou shalt think,
Though he divide the realm and give thee half, 60
It is too little, helping him to all ;
And he shall think that thou, which know'st the way
To plant unrightful kings, wilt know again,
Being ne'er so little urged, another way
To pluck him headlong from the usurped throne.
The love of wicked men converts to fear ;
That fear to hate, and hate turns one or both
To worthy danger and deserved death.

North. My guilt be on my head, and there an end.
Take leave and part ; for you must part forthwith. 70

K. Rich. Doubly divorced ! Bad men, you violate
A twofold marriage, 'twixt my crown and me,
And then betwixt me and my married wife.
Let me unkiss the oath 'twixt thee and me ;
And yet not so, for with a kiss 'twas made.
Part us, Northumberland ; I towards the north,
Where shivering cold and sickness pines the clime ;
My wife to France : from whence, set forth in pomp,
She came adorned hither like sweet May,
Sent back like Hallowmas or short'st of day. 80

Queen. And must we be divided ? must we part ?

K. Rich. Ay, hand from hand, my love, and heart from heart.

Queen. Banish us both and send the king with me.

North. That were some love but little policy.

Queen. Then whither he goes, thither let me go.

K. Rich. So two, together weeping, make one woe.
Weep thou for me in France, I for thee here ;
Better far off than near, be ne'er the near.
Go, count thy way with sighs ; I mine with groans.

Queen. So longest way shall have the longest moans. 90

K. Rich. Twice for one step I'll groan, the way being short,

And piece the way out with a heavy heart.
Come, come, in wooing sorrow let's be brief,
Since, wedding it, there is such length in grief:
One kiss shall stop our mouths, and dumbly part;
Thus give I mine, and thus take I thy heart.

Queen. Give me mine own again; 'twere no good part
To take on me to keep and kill thy heart.
So, now I have mine own again, be gone,
That I may strive to kill it with a groan. 100

K. Rich. We make woe wanton with this fond delay:
Once more, adieu; the rest let sorrow say. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II. *The* DUKE OF YORK'S *palace.*

Enter YORK *and his* DUCHESS.

Duch. My lord, you told me you would tell the rest,
When weeping made you break the story off,
Of our two cousins coming into London.

York. Where did I leave?

Duch. At that sad stop, my lord,
Where rude misgovern'd hands from windows' tops
Threw dust and rubbish on King Richard's head.

York. Then, as I said, the duke, great Bolingbroke,
Mounted upon a hot and fiery steed
Which his aspiring rider seem'd to know,
With slow but stately pace kept on his course, 10
Whilst all tongues cried 'God save thee, Bolingbroke!'
You would have thought the very windows spake,
So many greedy looks of young and old
Through casements darted their desiring eyes
Upon his visage, and that all the walls
With painted imagery had said at once
'Jesu preserve thee! welcome, Bolingbroke!'
Whilst he, from the one side to the other turning,
Bareheaded, lower than his proud steed's neck,

Bespake them thus : 'I thank you, countrymen :' 20
And thus still doing, thus he pass'd along.

Duch. Alack, poor Richard ! where rode he the whilst ?

York. As in a theatre, the eyes of men,
After a well-graced actor leaves the stage,
Are idly bent on him that enters next,
Thinking his prattle to be tedious ;
Even so, or with much more contempt, men's eyes
Did scowl on gentle Richard ; no man cried 'God save him !'
No joyful tongue gave him his welcome home :
But dust was thrown upon his sacred head ; 30
Which with such gentle sorrow he shook off,
His face still combating with tears and smiles,
The badges of his grief and patience,
That had not God, for some strong purpose, steel'd
The hearts of men, they must perforce have melted
And barbarism itself have pitied him.
But heaven hath a hand in these events,
To whose high will we bound our calm contents.
To Bolingbroke are we sworn subjects now,
Whose state and honour I for aye allow. 40

Duch. Here comes my son Aumerle.

York. Aumerle that was ;
But that is lost for being Richard's friend,
And, madam, you must call him Rutland now :
I am in parliament pledge for his truth
And lasting fealty to the new made king.

Enter AUMERLE.

Duch. Welcome, my son : who are the violets now
That strew the green lap of the new come spring ?

Aum. Madam, I know not, nor I greatly care not :
God knows I had as lief be none as one.

York. Well, bear you well in this new spring of time, 50
Lest you be cropped before you come to prime.
What news from Oxford ? hold those justs and triumphs ?

Aum. For aught I know, my lord, they do.
York. You will be there, I know.
Aum. If God prevent not, I purpose so.
York. What seal is that, that hangs without thy bosom?
Yea, look'st thou pale? let me see the writing.
Aum. My lord, 'tis nothing.
York. No matter, then, who see it:
I will be satisfied; let me see the writing.
Aum. I do beseech your grace to pardon me: 60
It is a matter of small consequence,
Which for some reasons I would not have seen.
York. Which, for some reasons, sir, I mean to see.
I fear, I fear,—
Duch. What should you fear?
'Tis nothing but some bond, that he has entered into
For gay apparel 'gainst the triumph day.
York. Bound to himself? what doth he with a bond
That he is bound to? Wife, thou art a fool.
Boy, let me see the writing.
Aum. I do beseech you, pardon me; I may not show it.
York. I will be satisfied; let me see it, I say. 71
[*He plucks it out of his bosom and reads it.*
Treason, foul treason! Villain! traitor! slave!
Duch. What is the matter, my lord?
York. Ho! who is within there?

Enter a Servant.

Saddle my horse.
God for his mercy, what treachery is here!
Duch. Why, what is it, my lord?
York. Give me my boots, I say; saddle my horse.
[*Exit Servant.*
Now, by mine honour, by my life, by my troth,
I will appeach the villain.
Duch. What is the matter?
York. Peace, foolish woman. 80

Duch. I will not peace. What is the matter, Aumerle?
Aum. Good mother, be content; it is no more
Than my poor life must answer.
Duch. Thy life answer!
York. Bring me my boots: I will unto the king.

Re-enter Servant *with boots.*

Duch. Strike him, Aumerle. Poor boy, thou art amazed.
Hence, villain! never more come in my sight.
York. Give me my boots, I say.
Duch. Why, York, what wilt thou do?
Wilt thou not hide the trespass of thine own?
Have we more sons? or are we like to have? 90
Is not my teeming date drunk up with time?
And wilt thou pluck my fair son from mine age,
And rob me of a happy mother's name?
Is he not like thee? is he not thine own?
York. Thou fond mad woman,
Wilt thou conceal this dark conspiracy?
A dozen of them here have ta'en the sacrament,
And interchangeably set down their hands,
To kill the king at Oxford.
Duch. He shall be none;
We'll keep him here: then what is that to him? 100
York. Away, fond woman! were he twenty times my son,
I would appeach him.
Duch. Hadst thou groan'd for him
As I have done, thou wouldst be more pitiful.
But now I know thy mind; thou dost suspect
That I have been disloyal to thy bed,
And that he is a bastard, not thy son:
Sweet York, sweet husband, be not of that mind:
He is as like thee as a man may be,
Not like to me, or any of my kin,
And yet I love him.

York. Make way, unruly woman! [*Exit.* 110
Duch. After, Aumerle! mount thee upon his horse;
Spur post, and get before him to the king,
And beg thy pardon ere he do accuse thee.
I'll not be long behind; though I be old,
I doubt not but to ride as fast as York:
And never will I rise up from the ground
Till Bolingbroke have pardon'd thee. Away, be gone!
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE III. *A royal palace.*

Enter BOLINGBROKE, PERCY, *and other* Lords.

Boling. Can no man tell me of my unthrifty son?
'Tis full three months since I did see him last:
If any plague hung over us, 'tis he.
I would to God, my lords, he might be found:
Inquire at London, 'mongst the taverns there,
For there, they say, he daily doth frequent,
With unrestrained loose companions,
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers;
Which he, young wanton and effeminate boy, 10
Takes on the point of honour to support
So dissolute a crew.
Percy. My lord, some two days since I saw the prince,
And told him of those triumphs held at Oxford.
Boling. And what said the gallant?
Percy. His answer was, he would unto the stews,
And from the common'st creature pluck a glove,
And wear it as a favour; and with that
He would unhorse the lustiest challenger.
Boling. As dissolute as desperate; yet through both 20
I see some sparks of better hope, which elder years
May happily bring forth. But who comes here?

Enter AUMERLE.

Aum. Where is the king?
Boling. What means our cousin, that he stares and looks
So wildly?
Aum. God save your grace! I do beseech your majesty,
To have some conference with your grace alone.
Boling. Withdraw yourselves, and leave us here alone.
[*Exeunt Percy and Lords.*
What is the matter with our cousin now?
Aum. For ever may my knees grow to the earth, 30
My tongue cleave to my roof within my mouth,
Unless a pardon ere I rise or speak.
Boling. Intended or committed was this fault?
If on the first, how heinous e'er it be,
To win thy after-love I pardon thee.
Aum. Then give me leave that I may turn the key,
That no man enter till my tale be done.
Boling. Have thy desire.
York. [*Within*] My liege, beware; look to thyself;
Thou hast a traitor in thy presence there. 40
Boling. Villain, I'll make thee safe. [*Drawing.*
Aum. Stay thy revengeful hand; thou hast no cause to fear.
York. [*Within*] Open the door, secure, fool-hardy king:
Shall I for love speak treason to thy face?
Open the door, or I will break it open.

Enter YORK.

Boling. What is the matter, uncle? speak;
Recover breath; tell us how near is danger,
That we may arm us to encounter it.
York. Peruse this writing here, and thou shalt know
The treason that my haste forbids me show. 50
Aum. Remember, as thou read'st, thy promise pass'd:
I do repent me; read not my name there;

My heart is not confederate with my hand.
York. It was, villain, ere thy hand did set it down.
I tore it from the traitor's bosom, king;
Fear, and not love, begets his penitence:
Forget to pity him, lest thy pity prove
A serpent that will sting thee to the heart.
Boling. O heinous, strong and bold conspiracy!
O loyal father of a treacherous son! 60
Thou sheer, immaculate and silver fountain,
From whence this stream through muddy passages
Hath held his current and defiled himself!
Thy overflow of good converts to bad;
And thy abundant goodness shall excuse
This deadly blot in thy digressing son.
York. So shall my virtue be his vice's bawd;
And he shall spend mine honour with his shame,
As thriftless sons their scraping fathers' gold.
Mine honour lives when his dishonour dies, 70
Or my shamed life in his dishonour lies:
Thou kill'st me in his life; giving him breath,
The traitor lives, the true man's put to death.
Duch. [*Within*] What ho, my liege! for God's sake, let me in.
Boling. What shrill-voiced suppliant makes this eager cry?
Duch. A woman, and thy aunt, great king; 'tis I.
Speak with me, pity me, open the door:
A beggar begs that never begg'd before.
Boling. Our scene is alter'd from a serious thing,
And now changed to 'The Beggar and the King.' 80
My dangerous cousin, let your mother in:
I know she is come to pray for your foul sin.
York. If thou do pardon, whosoever pray,
More sins for this forgiveness prosper may.
This fester'd joint cut off, the rest rest sound;
This let alone will all the rest confound.

Enter DUCHESS.

Duch. O king, believe not this hard-hearted man!
Love loving not itself none other can.
York. Thou frantic woman, what dost thou make here?
Shall thy old dugs once more a traitor rear? 90
Duch. Sweet York, be patient. Hear me, gentle liege.
[*Kneels.*
Boling. Rise up, good aunt.
Duch. Not yet, I thee beseech:
For ever will I walk upon my knees,
And never see day that the happy sees,
Till thou give joy; until thou bid me joy,
By pardoning Rutland, my transgressing boy.
Aum. Unto my mother's prayers I bend my knee.
York. Against them both my true joints bended be.
Ill mayst thou thrive, if thou grant any grace!
Duch. Pleads he in earnest? look upon his face; 100
His eyes do drop no tears, his prayers are in jest;
His words come from his mouth, ours from our breast:
He prays but faintly and would be denied;
We pray with heart and soul and all beside:
His weary joints would gladly rise, I know;
Our knees shall kneel till to the ground they grow:
His prayers are full of false hypocrisy;
Ours of true zeal and deep integrity.
Our prayers do out-pray his; then let them have
That mercy which true prayer ought to have. 110
Boling. Good aunt, stand up.
Duch. Nay, do not say, 'stand up;'
Say 'pardon' first, and afterwards 'stand up.'
An if I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach,
'Pardon' should be the first word of thy speech.
I never long'd to hear a word till now;
Say 'pardon,' king; let pity teach thee how:
The word is short, but not so short as sweet;

No word like 'pardon' for kings' mouths so meet.
York. Speak it in French, king; say, 'pardonne moi.'
Duch. Dost thou teach pardon pardon to destroy? 120
Ah, my sour husband, my hard-hearted lord,
That set'st the word itself against the word!
Speak 'pardon' as 'tis current in our land;
The chopping French we do not understand.
Thine eyes begin to speak; set thy tongue there;
Or in thy piteous heart plant thou thine ear;
That hearing how our plaints and prayers do pierce,
Pity may move thee 'pardon' to rehearse.
Boling. Good aunt, stand up.
Duch. I do not sue to stand;
Pardon is all the suit I have in hand. 130
Boling. I pardon him, as God shall pardon me.
Duch. O happy vantage of a kneeling knee!
Yet am I sick for fear: speak it again;
Twice saying 'pardon' doth not pardon twain,
But makes one pardon strong.
Boling. With all my heart
I pardon him.
Duch. A god on earth thou art.
Boling. But for our trusty brother-in-law and the abbot,
With all the rest of that consorted crew,
Destruction straight shall dog them at the heels.
Good uncle, help to order several powers 140
To Oxford, or where'er these traitors are:
They shall not live within this world, I swear,
But I will have them, if I once know where.
Uncle, farewell: and, cousin too, adieu:
Your mother well hath pray'd, and prove you true.
Duch. Come, my old son: I pray God make thee new.
[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV. *The same.*

Enter EXTON *and* Servant.

Exton. Didst thou not mark the king, what words he spake,
'Have I no friend will rid me of this living fear?'
Was it not so?
Serv. These were his very words.
Exton. 'Have I no friend?' quoth he: he spake it twice,
And urged it twice together, did he not?
Serv. He did.
Exton. And speaking it, he wistly look'd on me;
As who should say, 'I would thou wert the man
That would divorce this terror from my heart;'
Meaning the king at Pomfret. Come, let's go: 10
I am the king's friend, and will rid his foe.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE V. *Pomfret castle.*

Enter KING RICHARD.

K. Rich. I have been studying how I may compare
This prison where I live unto the world:
And for because the world is populous
And here is not a creature but myself,
I cannot do it; yet I'll hammer it out.
My brain I'll prove the female to my soul,
My soul the father; and these two beget
A generation of still-breeding thoughts,
And these same thoughts people this little world,
In humours like the people of this world, 10
For no thought is contented. The better sort,
As thoughts of things divine, are intermix'd
With scruples and do set the word itself
Against the word:

As thus, 'Come, little ones,' and then again,
'It is as hard to come as for a camel
To thread the postern of a small needle's eye.'
Thoughts tending to ambition, they do plot
Unlikely wonders; how these vain weak nails
May tear a passage through the flinty ribs 20
Of this hard world, my ragged prison walls,
And, for they cannot, die in their own pride.
Thoughts tending to content flatter themselves
That they are not the first of fortune's slaves,
Nor shall not be the last; like silly beggars
Who sitting in the stocks refuge their shame,
That many have and others must sit there;
And in this thought they find a kind of ease,
Bearing their own misfortunes on the back
Of such as have before endured the like. 30
Thus play I in one person many people,
And none contented: sometimes am I king;
Then treasons make me wish myself a beggar,
And so I am: then crushing penury
Persuades me I was better when a king;
Then am I king'd again; and by and by
Think that I am unking'd by Bolingbroke,
And straight am nothing: but whate'er I be,
Nor I nor any man that but man is
With nothing shall be pleased, till he be eased 40
With being nothing. Music do I hear? [*Music.*
Ha, ha! keep time: how sour sweet music is,
When time is broke and no proportion kept!
So is it in the music of men's lives.
And here have I the daintiness of ear
To check time broke in a disorder'd string;
But for the concord of my state and time
Had not an ear to hear my true time broke.
I wasted time, and now doth time waste me;
For now hath time made me his numbering clock; 50

My thoughts are minutes; and with sighs they jar
Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,
Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,
Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears.
Now sir, the sound that tells what hour it is
Are clamorous groans, which strike upon my heart,
Which is the bell: so sighs and tears and groans
Show minutes, times, and hours: but my time
Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,
While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock. 60
This music mads me; let it sound no more;
For though it have holp madmen to their wits,
In me it seems it will make wise men mad.
Yet blessing on his heart that gives it me!
For 'tis a sign of love; and love to Richard
Is a strange brooch in this all-hating world.

Enter a Groom of the Stable.

Groom. Hail, royal prince!
K. Rich. Thanks, noble peer;
The cheapest of us is ten groats too dear.
What art thou? and how comest thou hither,
Where no man never comes but that sad dog 70
That brings me food to make misfortune live?
Groom. I was a poor groom of thy stable, king,
When thou wert king; who, travelling towards York,
With much ado at length have gotten leave
To look upon my sometimes royal master's face.
O, how it yearn'd my heart when I beheld
In London streets, that coronation-day,
When Bolingbroke rode on roan Barbary,
That horse that thou so often hast bestrid,
That horse that I so carefully have dress'd! 80
K. Rich. Rode he on Barbary? Tell me, gentle friend,
How went he under him?

Groom. So proudly as if he disdain'd the ground.
K. Rich. So proud that Bolingbroke was on his back!
That jade hath eat bread from my royal hand;
This hand hath made him proud with clapping him.
Would he not stumble? would he not fall down,
Since pride must have a fall, and break the neck
Of that proud man that did usurp his back?
Forgiveness, horse! why do I rail on thee, 90
Since thou, created to be awed by man,
Wast born to bear? I was not made a horse;
And yet I bear a burthen like an ass,
Spurr'd, gall'd and tired by jauncing Bolingbroke.

Enter Keeper, *with a dish.*

Keep. Fellow, give place; here is no longer stay.
K. Rich. If thou love me, 'tis time thou wert away.
Groom. What my tongue dares not, that my heart shall say. [*Exit.*
Keep. My lord, will 't please you to fall to?
K. Rich. Taste of it first, as thou art wont to do. 99
Keep. My lord, I dare not: Sir Pierce of Exton, who came lately from the king, commands the contrary.
K. Rich. The devil take Henry of Lancaster and thee!
Patience is stale, and I am weary of it. [*Beats the keeper.*
Keep. Help, help, help!

Enter EXTON *and* Servants *armed.*

K. Rich. How now! what means death in this rude assault?
Villain, thy own hand yields thy death's instrument.
[*Snatching an axe from a Servant and killing him.*
Go thou, and fill another room in hell.
[*He kills another. Then Exton strikes him down.*
That hand shall burn in never-quenching fire

That staggers thus my person. Exton, thy fierce hand 110
Hath with the king's blood stain'd the king's own land.
Mount, mount, my soul! thy seat is up on high;
Whilst my gross flesh sinks downward, here to die. [*Dies.*

Exton. As full of valour as of royal blood:
Both have I spill'd; O would the deed were good
For now the devil, that told me I did well,
Says that this deed is chronicled in hell.
This dead king to the living king I'll bear:
Take hence the rest, and give them burial here. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI. *Windsor castle.*

Flourish. Enter BOLINGBROKE, YORK, *with other* Lords, *and* Attendants.

Boling. Kind uncle York, the latest news we hear
Is that the rebels have consumed with fire
Our town of Cicester in Gloucestershire;
But whether they be ta'en or slain we hear not.

Enter NORTHUMBERLAND.

Welcome, my lord: what is the news?
North. First, to thy sacred state wish I all happiness.
The next news is, I have to London sent
The heads of Salisbury, Spencer, Blunt, and Kent:
The manner of their taking may appear
At large discoursed in this paper here. 10
Boling. We thank thee, gentle Percy, for thy pains;
And to thy worth will add right worthy gains.

Enter FITZWATER.

Fitz. My lord, I have from Oxford sent to London
The heads of Brocas and Sir Bennet Seely,

Two of the dangerous consorted traitors
That sought at Oxford thy dire overthrow.
Boling. Thy pains, Fitzwater, shall not be forgot;
Right noble is thy merit, well I wot.

Enter PERCY, *and the* BISHOP OF CARLISLE.

Percy. The grand conspirator, Abbot of Westminster,
With clog of conscience and sour melancholy 20
Hath yielded up his body to the grave;
But here is Carlisle living, to abide
Thy kingly doom and sentence of his pride.
Boling. Carlisle, this is your doom:
Choose out some secret place, some reverend room,
More than thou hast, and with it joy thy life;
So as thou livest in peace, die free from strife:
For though mine enemy thou hast ever been,
High sparks of honour in thee have I seen.

Enter EXTON, *with persons bearing a coffin.*

Exton. Great king, within this coffin I present 30
Thy buried fear: herein all breathless lies
The mightiest of thy greatest enemies,
Richard of Bordeaux, by me hither brought.
Boling. Exton, I thank thee not; for thou hast wrought
A deed of slander with thy fatal hand
Upon my head and all this famous land.
Exton. From your own mouth, my lord, did I this deed.
Boling. They love not poison that do poison need,
Nor do I thee: though I did wish him dead,
I hate the murderer, love him murdered. 40
The guilt of conscience take thou for thy labour,
But neither my good word nor princely favour:
With Cain go wander thorough shades of night,
And never show thy head by day nor light.

Lords, I protest, my soul is full of woe,
That blood should sprinkle me to make me grow :
Come, mourn with me for that I do lament,
And put on sullen black incontinent :
I 'll make a voyage to the Holy Land,
To wash this blood off from my guilty hand : 50
March sadly after ; grace my mournings here ;
In weeping after this untimely bier. [*Exeunt.*

NOTES.

Act I. Scene I.

1. **Old John of Gaunt.** The Duke of Lancaster, uncle to Richard the Second, was so-called from his birthplace, Ghent, near Brussels, the continental pronunciation of the word being by the English thus corrupted. Though spoken of as **old**, he was at this time only fifty-eight years of age; but in Shakespeare's day the average life-time was shorter than at present, and the epithet 'old' was earlier applied: **time-honour'd**, venerable.

2. **oath and band**, bond confirmed by an oath; 'band' and 'bond' are merely phonetic variations of the same word, the latter form being the only one in use nowadays. "When," says Steevens, "these public challenges were accepted, each combatant found a pledge for his appearance at the time and place appointed."

3. **Hereford**, pronounced as a dissyllable, and of old frequently written 'Herford' or 'Harford.' The title came to him through his having married Mary de Bohun, second daughter of Humphrey, the last Earl of Hereford, and in 1397, he was by King Richard created Duke of Hereford. He was surnamed Bolingbroke from having been born at his father's castle at Bolingbroke, in Lincolnshire.

4. **to make good**, to prove, substantiate: **the boisterous late appeal**, the charge lately proclaimed in such violent language; an 'appeal' was a criminal charge or accusation made by one who undertook under penalty to prove it: here impeachment of treason to be made good by combat.

7. **liege**, paramount lord, sovereign; properly "faithful, subject, true, bound by tenure ... The etymology is disguised by a change both of sense and usage. We now say 'a *liege* vassal,' *i.e.* one bound to his lord; it is easy to see that this sense is due to a false etymology, which connected the word with the Lat. *ligatus*, bound ... But the fact is that the older phrase was 'a

liege lord,' and the older sense 'a *free* lord,' in exact contradiction to the popular notion ... From O. F. *lige*, 'liege, leal, or loyal' ... (Littré). 'A *liege* lord' seems to have been a lord of a free band; and his *lieges*, though serving under him, were privileged men, free from all other obligations; their name being due to their *freedom*, not to their service" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

8. **sounded**, endeavoured by conversation on the subject to ascertain; cp. *J. C.* ii. 1. 141, "But what of Cicero? shall we *sound* him?" The figure is from measuring the depth of water by a plummet.

9. **If he** ... **malice**; whether the cause of his challenge is long-standing animosity against the Duke of Norfolk.

10. **worthily**, with good and sufficient reason.

11. **On some** ... **him**? making the ground of his challenge some well-ascertained act of treason.

12. **As near** ... **argument**, so far as I could ascertain by closely questioning him on the subject. The idea in **sift** is that of separating the chaff from the corn, the pretexts that might be offered from the real truth; so, *Cymb.* v. 5. 134, "bitter torture shall *Winnow* the truth from falsehood"; **argument**, theme, subject; as frequently in Shakespeare.

13. **apparent**, evident; not, 'seeming': **danger**, dangerous intentions: cp, *R. III.* ii. 3. 27, "O, full of *danger* is the Duke of Gloucester."

16-7. **face** ... **speak**, the construction is 'we will hear the accuser and the accused freely speak face to face, and frowning brow to frowning brow.'

18. **High-stomach'd**, of haughty temperament; 'stomach' is used by Shakespeare figuratively of power of digestion; appetite; inclination, disposition; anger, resentment; stubborn courage; pride, arrogance.

19. **In rage** ... **fire**. In their rage as deaf to all attempts to moderate them as the sea in a storm, and as ready as fire to be kindled into a blaze.

20. **Many**, etc. To complete the metre, 'May,' 'Now,' and 'Full' have been proposed before **Many**. Abbott thinks **years** may here perhaps, as elsewhere in Shakespeare, be regarded as a dissyllable.

21. **loving**, as shown in the treatment of his subjects.

22. **Each day still better**, *i.e. may* each day, etc.: for **other**, used as a singular pronoun, see Abb. § 12.

23. **envying** ... **hap**, envying the happiness of each in having you for an inhabitant; **envying**, with the accent on the second syllable.

24. **Add ... crown!** Add to your glory as king on earth by making you immortal.

25. **but**, only.

26. **by the cause you come**, by the cause by (*i.e.* for) which you come. For the omission of the preposition after **come**, cp. *M. M.* ii. 2. 119, "Most ignorant of what he's most assured," *i.e.* assured *of*; *W. T.* iv. 4. 446, "To die upon the bed my father died," *i.e. on* which my father died.

27. **to appeal**, see note on l. 4.

28. **Cousin**, here in its strict sense the son or daughter of an uncle or aunt, but frequently used by Shakespeare of any relationship not of the first degree. An earl is now addressed by his sovereign as 'trusty and well-beloved *cousin*,' and the term has been so used since the days of Henry IV., who introduced the practice of thus addressing his nobility in order to flatter them by making out that they were his blood-relations: **what thou dost object**, what charge you have to bring against; cp. i. *H. VI.* ii. 4. 46, "This blot that they *object against* your house"; and with the preposition 'to,' *R. III.* ii. 417, "Good faith, good faith, the saying did not hold In him that did *object* the same to thee." The word literally means to cast in the way of a person.

30. **heaven . . speech!** may God be witness to the truth of my words! may my words be registered in heaven and I be punished if they are not true!

31. **In the devotion ... love**, out of such devotion as a loving subject should have toward his sovereign.

32. **Tendering ... prince**, holding the safety of my prince as something very dear; 'tender,' in this sense, is from the F. adjective *tendre*, tender; in the sense of 'offer,' 'proffer for acceptance,' also frequent in Shakespeare, from the F. verb *tendre*, to spread, display. In *Haml.* i. 3. 107, 9, Shakespeare plays upon the two senses, "*Tender* yourself more dearly; Or ... you'll *tender* me a fool."

33. **And free ... hate**, and free from other feelings such as hatred for which there is no good cause.

34. **appellant**, as impeacher, accuser.

37. **My body**, I by hazarding my life: **make good**, see note on l. 4.

38. **Or my ... heaven**, or, if I fail, my soul, which derives itself from God, shall answer before Him for the charge I bring; for **divine** the Cl. Pr. Edd. compare *A. W.* iii. 6. 31, "where 'the divine forfeit of his soul' is used in Shakespeare's manner for 'the forfeit of his divine soul.'"

39. **a miscreant**, a vile wretch; literally, an unbeliever, infidel, from O. F. *mescreant*, unbelieving, in which word, says

Skeat, the *mes-* answers to the Lat. *minus*, less, used in a bad sense.

40. **Too good** ... **live**, by your origin and rank worthy to be something better than a traitor and miscreant, by your evil practices unworthy to live.

41, 2. **Since the more** ... **fly**. I say this since, etc.; **crystal**, transparently bright; cp. *Cymb.* v. 4. 81, "Thy *crystal* window ope," addressed to Jove in heaven; **that in it fly**, that scud across it.

43. **the more** ... **note**, to intensify the stigma I cast upon you; for **aggravate**, cp. *M. W.* ii. 2. 296, "Ford's a knave and I will *aggravate* his style," *i.e.* heap further abusive epithets upon him; for **note**, cp. *L. L. L.* iv. 3. 125, "Ill, to example ill, Would from my forehead wipe a perjured *note*," *i.e.* a stigma of perjury.

44. **With a foul** ... **throat**, I force down your throat the name of a foul traitor.

45. **so please my sovereign**, if my sovereign so please; the condition being inferred in the subjunctive mood: **move**, *sc.* from this place.

46. **right drawn**, drawn in a just cause.

47. **Let not** ... **zeal**: if my words are cold (*i.e.* not bombastic like those of Hereford), let them not be taken as showing want of earnestness; cp. below, v. 3. 108, and i. *H. IV.* iv. 3. 63, "With tears of innocency and terms of *zeal*." This peer was Thomas Mowbray, sixth Baron Mowbray, created Earl of Nottingham in 1383 and Duke of Norfolk in 1397.

48-50. **'Tis not** ... **twain**; it is not by such contention as women love to indulge in, namely, the bitter and noisy war of words, that the cause at stake between us can be satisfied; **eager**, sharp, biting, from F. *aigre*, L. *acer*, keen; used by Shakespeare of material things also, *e.g. Haml.* i. 4. 2, "It is a nipping and an *eager* air; i. 5. 69, "*eager* droppings into milk"; **twain** and *two* differ in gender only. "*Twain* is masculine, whilst *two* is feminine and neuter; but this distinction was early disregarded" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

51. **The blood** ... **this**: there is hot blood which must be cooled by being spilt, before this matter can be decided.

52. **Yet**, *i.e.* though I do not imitate your braggart words.

53. **As to be hush'd**, as to suffer myself to be terrified into silence.

54. **the fair reverence**, that reverence which is due to your majesty; **highness**, here a title.

55. **From giving** ... **speech**, from loosening the reins of my

speech and spurring it on to a free course; **free speech**, a proleptic use, as below, i. 3. 241, "A partial slander sought I to avoid."

56. **would post**, carrying on the metaphor in the former line; cp. *Oth.* i. 3. 46, "haste, *post*-haste appearance."

57. **doubled**, not only forced down his throat, but forced down with double vehemence of language.

58-60. **Setting aside ... liege**, if his royal lineage may be put out of the question, and his relationship to you my sovereign be not taken into account.

62. **Which to maintain ... odds**, in maintenance of which charge I would allow him advantage in the struggle, would accept combat even though we were not on equal terms.

63. **tied**, obliged; for the construction of the word with an infinitive, cp. *T. S.* i. 1. 217, "And I am *tied to* be obedient"; *Cor.* ii. 2. 69, "But *tie* him not *to be* their bedfellow."

65. **inhabitable**, not habitable; the prefix *in-* having the negative force as in Latin. The Cl. Pr. Edd. compare Ben Jonson's *Catiline*, v. 1. 54, "some *inhabitable* place Where the hot sun and slime breeds naught but monsters"; and "inhabited" for "uninhabited" in Beaumont and Fletcher's *Thierry and Theodoret*, iii. 1.

66. **durst**, to 'dare' = to venture, have the courage to do a thing, has 'durst' in all persons singular and plural of the past indicative; when it means to 'challenge,' it makes a new preterite 'dared.'

67, 8. **Mean time ... lie.** For the meanwhile (*i.e.* until we meet in mortal combat) let this be an assurance of my loyalty that I swear by all the hopes I have here and hereafter that he lies most foully when he charges me with treason.

69. **gage**, literally a pledge (that the person throwing it down will meet another in combat); the usual pledge in these cases was a glove or gauntlet.

70. **Disclaiming ... king**, not putting in, as an excuse for not meeting you, any claim to relationship with the king.

71. **And lay ... royalty**, and for the time being lay aside, etc.

72. **Which fear ... except**, to which you take exception not from any reverence for the king, but purely out of fear, thinking in this way to shield yourself from fighting with me.

74. **mine honour's pawn**, that which I throw down in pledge of holding myself in honour bound to meet you; cp. *T. G.* ii. 4. 91, "Belike that now she hath enfranchised them Upon some other *pawn* for fealty."

75. **The rites of knighthood**, those chivalrous duties by which a man is bound in the ceremony of knighthood.

76. **arm to arm**, in personal combat; cp. *Mach.* i. 2. 56, "Till that Bellona's bridegroom ... Confronted him with self-comparisons, Point against point rebellious, *arm against arm.*"

77. **or thou ... devise**, or any more insulting terms that you can imagine.

79. **Which gently ... shoulder.** At the ceremony of knighthood, as the words 'Rise up, Sir So-and-so' are spoken by the king, he lays the flat side of his sword-blade upon the shoulder of the person dubbed.

80, 1. **in any ... trial**, in any trial of valour which by the laws of knightly combat are deemed fair and chivalrous.

82. **when I mount**, *sc.* my horse; such combats being on horseback.

83. **unjustly fight**, perhaps with a reference to the oath taken by combatants that they bore no charmed weapons.

85, 6. **It must ... him.** Any accusation which can possess us with so much as a thought of evil in him, must be a very weighty one. This is the only passage in which Shakespeare uses **inherit** as a transitive verb.

87. **what I speak ... it**, for the redundant pronoun, see Abb. § 243.

88. **nobles**! the 'noble' was a gold coin worth six shillings and eightpence.

89. **In name of lendings**, obtained under the pretence that the money was for payment of your highness' soldiers.

90. **The which .. employments**, which he has kept to himself for expenditure on his own vile purposes. "'The *which*' is generally used ... where the antecedent, or some word like the antecedent, is repeated, or else where such a repetition could be made if desired. In almost all cases there are two or more possible antecedents from which selection must be made" (Abb. § 270). So here the antecedent might be either **lendings** or **soldiers**; the former of course is really intended.

91. **injurious**, pernicious; cp. *Cymb.* iv. 2. 86, "Thou *injurious* thief, Hear but my name and tremble." We no longer apply the epithet to a person.

93. **Or ... or**, either ... or; 'or' is only 'other,' = the modern 'either' shortened, and 'other' ... 'other' was used as 'either' ... 'or' nowadays: **the furthest verge**, the most distant country.

95. **for**, during: **eighteen years**, "*i.e.* since the great rising of the commons in 1381" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

96. **Complotted and contrived**, hatched and devised; "con-

trive," in this sense, is used in *J. C.* ii. 3. 16, as a neuter verb, "If not, the Fates with traitors do *contrive.*"

97. **Fetch** ... **spring**, had their origin in the brain of, etc.

98, 9. **and further** ... **good**, and further will engage to substantiate in mortal combat my charges against his evil courses. It seems doubtful whether the construction here is 'maintain upon his bad life,' *i.e.* undertake by proof of his bad life to, etc. (cp. *Lear*, v. 3. 112, "If any man . . . will *maintain upon* Edmund . . . that he is a manifold traitor"), or 'maintain to make this good upon his bad life.' Possibly, **his bad life** being equivalent to 'him who has lived so bad a life,' there should be a comma after **maintain**, the line following being parenthetical, with the sense 'on the condition of making this good upon his bad life,' for **maintain** is not elsewhere used by Shakespeare with another verb in subordination to it. The construction would then correspond with ll. 92 and 95: **bad life** for the sake of the antithesis with **make good.**

100. **The duke** ... **death.** Thomas of Woodstock, the youngest son of Edward the Third, was murdered at Calais in 1397.

101. **Suggest**, prompt in an underhand manner; cp. *Cor.* ii. 1. 261, "We must *suggest* the people in what hatred He still hath held them": **soon-believing**, only too ready to listen to his suggestions.

102. **consequently**, as a sequel to his suggestions; cp. *T. N.* iii. 4. 79, "'Cast thy humble slough,' says she ... and *consequently* sets down the manner how"; *K. J.* iv. 2. 240, "Yea, without stop, didst let thy heart consent, And *consequently* thy rude hand to act": **traitor**, used as an adjective = treacherous.

103. **sluiced out**, caused to rush forth in a torrent, as water rushes forth when the flood-gates are lifted. Cp. *Oth.* i. 3. 56, "for my particular grief Is of so flood-gate and o'erbearing nature That," etc.

104. **which blood**, "*Which* being an adjective frequently accompanies the repeated antecedent, where definiteness is required, or where care must be taken to select the right antecedent": "And, if she did play false, the fault was hers, *Which fault* lies," etc. (Abb. § 269): **like sacrificing Abel's**, see *Genesis*, iv. 10, "The voice of thy brother's blood crieth unto me from the ground."

105. **tongueless caverns**, the bowels of the earth which, though without tongues, yet cry aloud; cp. *J. C.* iii. 2. 229, 30, "Show you sweet Cæsar's wounds, poor poor dumb mouths, And bid them speak for me.'

107. **by the glorious** ... **descent**, I swear by the noble blood of which I am justly proud.

108. **spent**, sacrificed in the endeavour; cp. *Cymb.* v. 3. 81, "On either side I come to *spend my breath*," *i.e.* to lose my life.

109. **pitch**, a technical term for the highest point to which a hawk towers; cp., for the literal sense, ii. *H. VI.* ii. 1. 6, "But what a point, my lord, your falcon made, And what a *pitch* she flew above the rest"; for the figurative sense, *J. C.* i. 1. 78, "These growing feathers pluck'd from Cæsar's wing Will make him fly an ordinary *pitch*."

113. **this slander of his blood**, this man whose life is a disgrace to those with whom he is related by blood, the king included.

117. **As he is but**, instead of being, as he is, only my, etc.

118. **my sceptre's awe**, that awe which my sceptre (the symbol of power) inspires in my subjects; cp. *M. V.* iv. 1. 190, 1, "His *sceptre* shows the force of temporal power, The attribute to *awe* and majesty."

119. **neighbour nearness**, close relationship; cp., for the adjectival use of **neighbour**, ii. *H. IV.* iv. 5. 124, "Now, *neighbour* confines, purge you of your scum."

120, 1. **should nothing ... soul**, should in no way shield him from punishment, nor turn to partiality the firmness of my nature which will not stoop to any injustice.

122. **so art thou**, *i.e.* so far as I am concerned, you are both upon an equality.

124, 5. **as low ... liest**, right down to the very depths of your heart you lie. To 'lie in the throat' was worse than to 'lie from the lips,' and to 'lie in the heart' a degree still worse. Staunton on ii. *H. IV.* i. 2. 94, quotes from an old Italian treatise on War and the Duello a passage in which the different gradations of giving the lie are enumerated as the simple 'Thou liest'; then, 'Thou liest in the throat'; 'Thou liest in the throat like a rogue'; 'Thou liest in the throat like a rogue as thou art,' the last being an insult which could not be passed by without a challenge to combat.

126. **that receipt**, that which I received: **I had**, *which* I had; for the omission of the relative, see Abb. § 244.

128. **reserved**, kept to myself.

129. **For that**, on 'that' as a conjunctional affix, see Abb. § 151.

130. **Upon remainder ... account**, in the matter of the balance of a heavy sum still due from him; **dear**, as an intensive, is frequent in Shakespeare.

131. **Since last ... queen.** This was Richard's second wife, Isabella, daughter of Charles VI. of France, whom he married

at Calais in 1396 while she was yet a child some nine years old.

132. **For**, as regards.

133, 4. **but to my own disgrace ... case.** "Norfolk always denied having killed Gloster; and by the words 'neglected my sworn duty,' he probably refers to his having failed to place Gloster in the Tower, and having taken him instead to Calais, where he was, according to Holinshed, smothered in his bed by servants commissioned to do so" (C. Clarke).

138. **A trespass ... soul**, a sin which grievously distresses my soul; to 'vex' in former days was used with a stronger meaning than it now bears, it being in modern language applied chiefly to petty troubles.

139. **But ere ... sacrament**, a full confession of sin, being a condition enforced by the Church before the sacrament could be partaken of.

140. **exactly**, on every point, stating each particular for which forgiveness was desired; cp. *A. C.* v. 2. 139, "This is the brief of money, plate, and jewels I am possessed of; 'tis *exactly* valued."

142. **as for ... appeal'd**, as for all the other charges brought against me; see note on l. 4.

143. **It issues ... villain**, it is born of the malice of, etc.

144. **recreant**, cowardly; "properly the present participle of *recroire*, 'to believe again; also to restore, deliver, or give back;' (Cotgrave) ... the present participle *recreant* and past participle *recreu* partook of the sense of Low Lat. *recredere*, from which F. *recroire* is derived. This verb, literally to believe again, or to alter one's faith was also used in the phrase *se recredere*, to own oneself beaten in a duel or judicial combat" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*): **degenerate**, *i.e.* from the noble race of which he is sprung.

145. **in myself**, in my own person.

146. **interchangeably**, in exchange for the gage which he has thrown down.

147. **Upon**, at.

148. **To prove**, in token that I will prove.

149. **Even ... bosom**, by shedding the best blood locked up in his heart.

150. **In haste whereof**, for the hastening of which.

153. **Let 's purge ... blood**, let us physic this choleric disease, under which you are both labouring, without bleeding.

154. **This**, *sc.* remedy.

155. **incision**, the term used in lancing.

156. **conclude and be agreed**, come to a mutual and final agreement; cp. *Cor.* iii. 1. 145, "where gentry, title, wisdom Cannot *conclude* but by the yea and no Of general ignorance."

157. **Our doctors .. bleed.** In days when bleeding was an almost universal remedy, quacks pretended to foretell what seasons were favourable for the operation. Cp. Fletcher, *The Chances*, i. 8. 7-9, "Why, all physicians And penny almanacks allow the opening Of veins this month."

160. **To be ... age**, it cannot but become an old man like me to be a peacemaker, and therefore I will undertake the task.

162. **When, Harry, when**? how long are you going to delay doing what I bid you? An exclamation of impatience very common in the old dramatists.

163. **Obedience ... again**, the obedience you owe to me as your father enjoins that I should not have to repeat my command.

164. **no boot**, nothing to be gained by refusing; *i.e.* it is vain for you to refuse when your king commands; **boot**, A. S. *bót*, profit, advantage.

165. **My life ... shame**, I am ready to lay down my life at your bidding, but not to sacrifice my honour.

168. **Despite ... grave**, which in spite of death will still live honourably upon my grave.

169. **To dark ... have**, I will not place in your hands to turn to disgrace; the gloom of the grave I can endure, but not the deep shadow of dishonour.

170. **impeach'd.** "The word 'impeach' means, originally, 'to hinder,' from the French *empêcher*, and thence 'to accuse,' because the first step in an accusation is to secure the personal attendance of the accused on the day of trial, thus impeding his free action" (Cl. Pr. Edd.). **baffled**, foiled, disgraced. "The history of the word is recorded by Hall, Chron. Henry VIII., anno 5. Richardson quotes the passage to show that *to baffull* is 'a great reproach among the Scottes, and is used when a man is openly periured, and then they make of him an image paynted reuersed, with his heeles upwarde, with his name, wondering, cryenge, and blowing out of [*i.e.* at] hym with hornes, in the moost despitefull manner they can.'" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*). The etymology of the word is doubtful.

172. 3. **his heart-blood Which**, the heart-blood of him who, etc.; cp. *H. V.* ii. 2. 27, "heart-grief."

174. **lions ... tame**, according to Malone an allusion to the lion of England and the golden leopard, the crest of the house of Norfolk. The Cl. Pr. Edd., however, point out that the present Norfolk crest is a golden lion; and French gives as Mowbray's arms "*Gules* [*i.e.* red] a lion rampant *Argent*" [*i.e.* silver]. The

expression need not be taken to mean anything else than that the more powerful animal makes the less powerful one to cower down before it, *i.e.* that a duke must yield to a king.

175. **but not** ... **spots**, a reference to *Jeremiah*, xiii. 23, "Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his *spots?*" **his**, the king's allusion is a general one intended to be taken particularly; and so Norfolk by his answer takes it: **take but my shame**, if, by taking it upon yourself, you will relieve me of the disgrace which I should incur by surrendering the gage thrown down for my acceptance, I at once, etc.

177. **mortal times**, human life.

178. **that away**, that being lost.

179. **Men are** ... **clay**, a man is nothing nobler than a piece of, etc. Cp. *Haml.* v. 1. 231-3, "Alexander died, Alexander was buried, Alexander returneth into dust; the dust is earth; of the earth we make loam."

180. **a ten-times-barr'd-up chest**, a chest secured, in the strongest possible manner.

182. **is my life**, *i.e.* the two things are identical.

184. **mine honour** ... **try**; let me make trial of my honour in combat with him who has endeavoured to destroy it; for the transposition in **dear my liege**, see Abb. § 13.

186. **throw up**, abandon.

188. **Shall I** ... **sight**? Do you wish that I should be humbled in the sight of my father, who should be the last of all men to witness my disgrace?

189, 90. **Or with** ... **dastard**? Or that in the presence of this craven, who stands here cowed by my defiance, I should wrong my nobility by the pallor of that fear which the faces of none but beggars should wear? For **pale beggar-fear**, cp. *Macb.* iv. 1. 85, "That I may tell *pale-hearted fear* it lies"; for **impeach**, see note on l. 170.

191. **with such feeble wrong**, by an insult showing such weakness.

192. **Or sound** ... **parle**, or basely make overtures for peace. A 'parle' or 'parley' was a conference with a view to negotiations, and an invitation to it was commonly given by the sound of a trumpet; cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 205, "Our trumpet call'd you to this gentle *parle.*"

193. **The slavish** ... **fear**, that which would act as the instrument of fear in slavishly retracting what had been boldly uttered; for **motive**, cp. *A. W.* iv. 4. 20, "As it hath fated her to be my *motive* And helper to a husband."

194, 5. **in his** ... **face**, with bitter insult in the face of Mowbray where shame dwells as though it were its home.

197. **Which since** ... **friends**, and since our command is powerless to make you friends.

198. **as your** ... **it**, on peril of your lives if you fail to appear.

199. **Coventry**, in Warwickshire, about nineteen miles from Birmingham: **Saint Lambert's day**, September 17th.

200. **arbitrate**, determine; cp. *Macb.* v. 4. 20, "But certain issue strokes must *arbitrate.*" Literally, to act as an umpire, and so used in *R. J.* iv. 1. 63, "This bloody knife Shall play the umpire, *arbitrating* that Which the commission of thy years and act Could to no issue of true honour bring."

201. **The swelling** ... **hate**; the quarrel now so inflated by your inveterate hatred; cp. *Lear*, iv. 4. 27, "No *blown* ambition doth our arms incite."

202. **atone**, reconcile; literally 'make at one'; cp. *A. C.* ii. 2. 102, "The present need speaks to *atone* you."

203. **we shall** ... **chivalry**: we are determined that a trial of arms shall, by the prowess of the victor, decide whose cause is just; justice shall mark out by the victory of the one or the other on whose side right is. C. Clarke remarks, "There is peculiar appropriateness in the employment of the word [**design**] here; because *designator* was a term applied to 'a *marshal*, a master of the play or prize, who appointed every one his place, and adjudged the victory.'"

204, 5. **Lord Marshal** ... **alarms**. Lord Marshal, command that our officers at arms be ready to regulate the decision of this home-bred quarrel; **home alarms**, contrasted with alarms of foreign invasion; the **officers at arms** were those charged with the management of tournaments and combats, like the present one, of a more deadly nature. Norfolk himself was Lord Marshal, and on this occasion his duties were discharged by the Duke of Surrey. To mend the metre here, some editors omit **Lord**.

Scene II.

Stage Direction. **The Duchess of Gloucester**, Eleanor Bohun, widow of Thomas, son of Edward the Third.

1. **the part** ... **blood**, my relationship to Gloster.

2, 3. **Doth more** ... **life**! urges me more strongly than your outcries to take steps against those who so foully murdered him; *i.e.* if anything could move me to seek their punishment, it would be the fact of their having butchered Gloster.

4, 5. **But since ... heaven**; but since punishment belongs to those to whom the sin, which we cannot punish, is due. Gaunt hints that Richard had a share in Gloster's murder, and later on openly accuses him of it.

6. **Put we ... heaven**, let us leave our cause of complaint to be decided by heaven when it shall please to do so.

7. **they**, Shakespeare frequently uses heaven as a plural, *e.g. Macb.* ii. 1. 4, *Oth.* iv. 2. 47, *R. III.* v. 5. 20.

9. **Finds ... spur**? Does not the tie of brotherhood prompt you to any speedier vengeance? are you really content to wait till heaven shall see fit to exact vengeance?

10. **Hath ... fire**? is your love but in ashes? is it but as burnt-out coals?

14, 5. **Some of those ... cut**; the same thought repeated in both lines, in the former the imagery referring to "vials," in the latter to "branches"; though strictly speaking, it was the 'thread of life,' that Atropos, the third Destiny cut. Those that died a natural death were Edward, the Black Prince, William of Hatfield, Lionel of Antwerp, and William of Windsor.

20. **his summer ... faded**, his life being cut off in its prime.

21. **envy's**, here, as frequently in Shakespeare, the word is used in the sense of hatred, malice.

22. **his blood was thine**, you and he were of the same blood.

23. **self mould**, for 'self' as an adjective, see Abb. § 20.

25. **in him**, by his death.

26-28. **thou dost ... life.** In seeing your brother murdered, your brother who was the copy of your father, without attempting to avenge his murder, you are in a large measure a party to your father's death. For **consent**, cp. i. *H. VI.* i. 5. 34, "You all *consented* unto Salisbury's death"; *Oth.* v. 2. 297, "Did you and he *consent* in Cassio's death?"; **model** is used by Shakespeare both of a pattern after which something is to be made, and of the thing made in imitation of a pattern.

29. **despair**, despondency, want of courage.

31. **Thou showest ... life**, you show your enemies how without obstacle they may make their way to your life.

35. **to safeguard**, to protect; cp. *H. V.* i. 2. 176, "Since we have locks to *safeguard* necessaries."

38. **His deputy ... sight.** "Mr. Staunton punctuates thus: 'His deputy anointed, in His sight Hath caused his death.' We have adhered to the old stopping because the king was anointed at his coronation in the house of God and therefore especially in

His sight. This part of the ceremony made the greater impression as the king was stripped to the waist" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

40. **I may never**, it is impossible for me ever. "In 'I *may* not-come' *may* would with us mean 'possibility,' and the 'not' would be connected with 'come' instead of *may*; 'my not-coming is a possibility.' On the other hand, the Elizabethans frequently connect the 'not' with *may*, and thus with them 'I *may*-not come' might mean 'I can-not or must-not come.' Thus *may* is parallel to 'must' in the following passage:—'Yet I must not, For certain friends that are both his and mine, Whose loves I *may* not drop.'—*Macb.* iii. 1. 122." (Abb. § 310.)

41. **against His minister**, it is the fact of Richard being God's minister, vice-gerent on earth, not any other cause, which deters me from lifting a hand against him.

42. **complain myself**, Steevens gives several instances from old writers of "complain" as a transitive verb (though none of the reflexive use, as here), and Mason observes that the phrase **complain myself** is a literal translation of the French *me plaindre*.

46. **cousin**, see note on i. 1. 28: **fell**, cruel; A.S. *fel*, fierce, dire.

47. **sit**, optative; may they sit!

49. **if misfortune ... career**, if he escape misfortune at the first onset; **career** was a technical term in tilting for the encounter at full speed of the mounted knights.

53. **A caitiff recreant to**, a miserable apostate yielding himself captive to, etc.; **caitiff**, literally a captive; Skeat quotes Chaucer, *Troilus and Cressida*, iii. 331, "*Caitif* to cruel Kynge Agámemnon," = captive to the cruel King Agamemnon; **recreant**, properly a present participle, and literally one who believes again, and so changes his faith; an apostate.

54. **sometimes**, formerly; Shakespeare uses "sometimes" and "sometime" indifferently for 'from time to time,' 'once,' 'formerly.'

55. **With her ... life**, must pass the remainder of her life with no other companion than grief; cp. *K. J.* iii. 1. 73, "here I and sorrow sit, Here is my throne, bid Kings come bow to it."

57. **As much good**, etc., *i.e. may* as, etc.

58, 9. **grief ... weight**: it is not its emptiness which causes grief to rebound, as hollow balls do, but its weight; *i.e.* if my grief reiterates itself, it is not because it is so light, but because it is so heavy.

60, 1. **I take ... done.** Though I now bid you farewell without saying more of my griefs, I do so before I have half begun the story of them; for sorrow, though it may seem done, has not in

reality passed away: *i.e.* do not suppose, from my now saying no more of my sorrows, that they are in any way healed.

62. **Commend**, give loving messages from me to, etc.

65. **what?** *i.e.* what was it I wished to say?

66. **With all good speed**, as quickly as he possibly can: **Plashy**, in Essex, midway between Chelmsford and Dunmow, was the residence of the lord high constables of England, and was occupied by the Duchess in virtue of her husband having held that office.

67. **Alack**, probably, according to Skeat, a corruption of *ah, lak*, M. E. loss, misfortune, and so meaning 'ah! failure,' or 'ah! a loss:' **and what**, etc., *i.e.* and yet what good is it my asking him to visit me there, for what will he find except, etc.

68. **lodgings**, apartments, chambers; cp. ii. *H. IV.* iv. 5. 234, "Doth any name particular belong Unto the *lodging* where I first did swoon?" **unfurnish'd walls** no longer, as in former days, hung with rich tapestry.

69. **offices**, those belonging to servants, the kitchens, pantries, etc. The Duchess means that she can no longer show her old hospitality to visitors.

70. **for welcome**, in the way of welcome.

71. **Therefore ... there**, therefore, though I still ask you to carry my kind messages, do not bid him come to me, as I just now asked you to do.

72. **To seek ... where**, *i.e.* for there he will find nothing but sorrow, and that he need not take a journey to find, for it is to be found everywhere.

73. **will I hence**, the verb of motion omitted, as frequently with adverbs and prepositions.

74. **The last ... eye.** For the last time, with weeping eyes, I bid you farewell.

SCENE III.

1. **Aumerle.** Edward Plantagenet, eldest son of the Duke of York, was made Duke of Albemarle, or Aumerle, by Richard II., and afterwards "for being Richard's friend" (v. 2. 42) was degraded by Henry IV. to his former title, Earl of Rutland. At the combat between Mowbray and Bolingbroke he officiated as Lord High Constable.

3. **sprightfully and bold**, for this ellipsis of the adverbial inflection, see Abb. § 397.

4. **appellant's**, challenger's; here the Earl of Hereford.

STAGE DIRECTION. *When they are set, i.e.* seated.

9, 10. **and orderly** ... **cause**, and, in accordance with the regular procedure in such cases, administer to him an oath that his cause is just. For **swear**, used transitively, cp. *J. C.* ii. 1. 129, "*Swear* priests and cowards and men cautelous."

14. **on thy** ... **oath**, by virtue of your character as a knight, and of the oath you took when you were made one; a hendiadys for 'knightly oath.'

15. **As so defend** ... **valour**, as you hope that heaven and your valour may protect you in accordance with your prayer—the prayer customary on such occasions, "defend me heaven," used by him in l. 25.

17. **engaged**, bound.

18. **defend**, forbid; frequent in Shakespeare, *e.g. Oth.* i. 3. 267, "And *heaven defend* your good souls that you think," etc.: i. *H. IV.* iv. 3. 38, "And *God defend* but still I should stand so."

20. **my succeeding issue.** "Notwithstanding that the emendation of the Folios [*his*] yields an easier sense, we follow the reading of the Quartos, which may be explained, inasmuch as the Duke of Norfolk's 'succeeding issue' would be involved in the forfeiture incurred by disloyalty to his king. It may also be noted that King Richard had never any issue" (*Cambridge Shakespeare*).

21. **appeals**, see note on i. 1. 4.

23. **in** ... **myself**, we should now say either 'in defending myself, or 'in *the* defending *of* myself'; see Abb. §§ 93, 178.

25. **as**, according as.

28. **plated** ... **war**, habited in plate armour; broad solid armour as distinguished from mail, which was composed of small pieces or scales.

30. **Depose** ... **cause**. Cause him to make his deposition on oath that his cause is just. Shakespeare does not elsewhere use the transitive verb in this sense.

32. **lists** were the space enclosed for the combat.

34. **so defend**, according as you hope that heaven may protect you.

42. **no person be**, let no person be.

43. **daring-hardy**, on compound adjectives in which the first has an adverbial force, see Abb. § 2: **as to** ... **lists**, *i.e.* in order to interfere with the combatants.

44, 5. **such officers** ... **designs**, the officers appointed to see that this combat is carried out in a fair and orderly manner; cp.

i. 1. 80, 1, "I'll answer thee in any *fair* degree, or chivalrous *design* of knightly trial." We should now say either 'such officers as are appointed,' or 'the officers appointed.'

50. **a ceremonious leave**, a formal farewell such as persons under the circumstances usually take, not the mere brief words used when parting for a short time only.

51. **several**, each of his own friends.

52. **in all duty**, with all duteous subjection.

56. **royal**, because the combat was to take place in the presence of the king.

57. **my blood**, you who are of the same blood as myself.

58. **dead**, when dead.

59, 60. **O, let ... spear**; "Bolingbroke means, if he were to be slain by Mowbray, he would shew himself unworthy of being lamented, and it would be a profanation to weep for him" (Cl. Pr. Edd.); **gored**, pierced; "formed as a verb from M. E. *gare, gor, gar,* a spear" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

61. **as is .. flight**, as is the falcon when about to swoop down upon its quarry.

65. **I have ... death**, my business is with death.

66. **cheerly**, cheerily.

67. **at English feasts**. "The custom of ending a great dinner with confectionery of elaborate structure was general throughout England in Shakespeare's time, and still exists in college halls. From the emphasis laid upon 'English,' the author seems to imply that the custom was peculiar to this country. Compare Bacon (*Life and Letters*, ed. Spedding, vol. iii., p. 215, note): "Let not this Parliament end, like a Dutch feast, in salt meats; but, like an English feast, in sweet meats" (Cl. Pr. Edd.): **regreet**, greet.

68. **the daintiest**, *sc.* viands.

70. **regenerate**, born anew in me.

71. **twofold**, *i.e.* his own and that of his father.

72. **To reach at ... head**, cp. i. *H. IV.* i. 3. 202, "To pluck bright honour from the pale-faced moon."

73. **Add proof**, make it doubly proof against the weapons of my enemy; 'proof armour,' or 'armour of proof,' was armour the strength of which had been proved or tested. So, we still speak of proving a sword, gun barrel, cannon, etc.

75. **waxen coat**, coat which to the touch of my lance shall be as penetrable as if made of wax; cp. *T. N.* ii. 2. 31, "How easy is it for the proper-false In women's *waxen* hearts to set their forms!" *i.e.* hearts easily impressed.

76. **And furbish** ... **Gaunt**, and give a fresh lustre to, etc. ; a **Gaunt**, *i.e.* of Gaunt.

77. **lusty haviour**, brave demeanour in battle : **even** adds an emphasis to the words.

80. **doubly redoubled**, so, in *Macb.* i. 2. 28, "*Doubly redoubled* strokes upon the foe" ; **redoubled** is metrically a quadrisyllable.

81. **amazing**, which confounds, bewilders ; the word was in Shakespeare's day used in a more forcible sense than it now has ; cp. *K. J.* iv. 2. 137, "Bear with me, cousin, for I was *amazed* Under the tide." Probably from *a* intensive and *maze*, a labyrinth, confusion : **casque**, helmet.

82. **Of thy** ... **enemy**, of the pernicious enemy opposed to you.

84. **Mine innocency** ... **thrive** ! May my innocence (of all treason) and the help of St. George (the patron saint of England) help me to succeed !

88. **with a freer heart**, with a heart more lightened by freedom.

90. **golden**, precious : **uncontroll'd**, 'control' is short for *counter-rolle*, the old form of *counter-roll* ... — O. F. *contre-rôle*, a duplicate register used to verify the official or first roll" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

91. **dancing**, *i.e.* with joy ; cp. *Cor.* iv. 5. 122, "but that I see thee here, Thou noble thing ! more *dances* my rapt heart" ; and v. 3. 99, "Make our eyes flow with joy, hearts *dance* with comforts."

92. **this feast of battle**, this combat which is as a feast to me.

93. **peers**, equals in rank.

95. **as to jest**, "as if I were going to a mock-fight" (Schmidt) ; others explain the words as taking part in a masque or revel.

96. **truth hath a quiet breast**, there is no doubt or disquietude in those who know their cause to be just.

97. **securely**, with certainty, perfect assurance.

98. **couched**, calmly reposing.

102. **amen**, so be it.

105. **for God**, in God's cause.

106. **On pain** ... **recreant**, it being the penalty of his not proving Norfolk to be a traitor that he himself shall be declared false and recreant.

108. **him**, *i.e.* Bolingbroke.

112. **approve**, prove ; as frequently in Shakespeare, *e.g.* ii. *H. IV.* i. 2. 180, "my growth would *approve* the truth" : *A. W.* iii. 7. 13, "For you have show'd me that which well *approves* You're great in fortune."

114. **with a free desire**, eagerly desiring.

115. **attending**, waiting.

STAGE DIRECTION. *A charge*, a set of notes on the trumpet giving the signal for the onset.

117. **warder**, a truncheon borne by those who presided at such combats, the throwing down of which was a signal for the combat to cease.

118. **lay by**, put off, lay aside.

121. **Withdraw with us**, said to the peers about him.

122. **while we ... decree**, till we announce to these dukes what our decree in the matter is; for **while** = till, cp. *Macb.* iii. 1. 44, "*while* then, God be with you"; and 'whiles' *T. N.* iv. 3. 29, "He shall conceal it *Whiles* you are willing it shall come to note": for **return**, cp. *Per.* ii. 2. 3, "*Return them*, we are ready."

123. **Draw near**, said to the two combatants.

124. **And list ... done**, and listen to the decision at which in deliberation with our counsel we have arrived.

125. **For that**, in order that; 'for' with the indicative meant 'because,' with the future or conditional 'in order that.'

126. **fostered**, nourished; 'foster,' A. S. *fóstor*, nourishment, from A. S. *fóda*, food.

128. **Of civil ... sword**, of wounds dealt in civil war by the hands of those who are neighbours (and therefore should be friends). The only known copies of the first quarto give 'cruel' for **civil**, and that reading is adopted by Dyce.

129. **eagle-winged**, soaring aloft like the eagle.

131. **rival-hating envy**, jealous hatred: **set on you**, instigated you.

132, 3. **which in ... sleep**, which now has been rocked to a sleep as calm as that of an infant. The folios and the fifth quarto omit ll. 129-33, which were restored by Pope from the quarto of 1598.

134. **Which**, *sc.* sleep.

134-7. **Which so ... peace**, the meaning seems to be 'from which sleep peace being awakened with,' etc., might be driven from our quiet confines; **untuned**, discordant.

135. **bray**, a word especially applied to the clangour of trumpets.

136. **grating shock**, clash of arms in the shock of battle.

138. **banish** is as frequently used without the preposition as with it.

140. **upon pain of life**, upon pain of losing your life.

142. **regreet**, greet again.

143. **stranger**, a substantive used as an adjective; cp. *M. N. D.* i. 1. 219, "To seek new friends and *stranger* companies."

147. **Shall point on me**, shall shine down on me: **gild**, give a radiance which it would not otherwise have.

150, 1. **The sly** ... **exile**, the hours, as they creep along with noiseless, stealthy step, shall not bring an end to the grievous exile imposed upon you, its limit being one to which there is no date set. For **sly** the second folio gives 'fly,' which, with a hyphen, some editors adopt; and perhaps the idea of the stealthy, imperceptible, movement of time, involved in **sly**, is hardly in keeping with the tediousness that the hours would have to one in exile. **determinate**, "a legal word applied to a bond. Cp. *Sonn.* lxxxvii. 4, 'My bonds in thee are all *determinate*.' The expression 'determinate the dateless limit' is pleonastic. 'Dateless' is used in a legal sense in *R. J.* v. 3. 115, 'A *dateless* bargain to engrossing death'" (Cl. Pr. Edd.): **dear**, used as an intensive, grievously felt; cp. *Tim.* v. 1. 231, "*dear* peril," *Oth.* i. 3. 260, "*dear* absence," in both cases meaning bitterly felt.

152. **The hopeless** ... **return**, for **word**, used of a phrase, cp. *R. J.* i. 4. 40, "Tut, 'dun's the mouse,' the constable's own *word*."

156. **A dearer** ... **maim**, a richer reward, not so cruel an injury. Monck Mason points out that as Shakespeare here uses **merit** in the sense of 'reward,' so he frequently uses 'meed,' which properly means 'reward,' for 'merit.' Johnson objects to the phrase to 'deserve a merit'; but probably if it had not been for the parenthetical line, "As to be cast forth in the common air," we should have had some other word, such as 'expected,' for **deserved**; and, further, **deserved**, though not a suitable word with **merit**, is perfectly suitable with **maim**, the nearer of the two objects.

159. **These forty years**, Mowbray is apparently speaking in round numbers; for, as the Cl. Pr. Edd. point out, he could not at this time have been more than two and thirty years old.

161. **forgo**, usually but inaccurately spelt 'forego,' is, like 'forbid,' 'fordo,' 'forgive,' etc., formed from the intensive 'for,' = through, throughly, and 'go.'

162. **viol**, "a six-stringed guitar. This speech is entirely Shakespeare's own invention. It is not probable that Norfolk was ignorant of French and Latin, as he had been sent on an embassy to France and Germany" (Cl. Pr. Edd.)

163. **cunning instrument**, instrument cunningly, *i.e.* skilfully, constructed; cp. *Cymb.* iv. 2. 186, "My *ingenious instrument*," said of the instrument on which Imogen was playing; **cased up**, shut up in its case.

164. **being open**, when taken out of its case: **his hands**, the hands of him; for *his*, *her*, etc., as the antecedent of a relative, see Abb. § 218.

165. **That knows ... harmony**, not taught so to touch it as to call forth the harmony in it.

167. **doubly portcullis'd**, barred up as by a double portcullis; which is a sliding door of cross timbers or ironwork let down to protect a gateway.

168. **unfeeling**, insensible to wrong.

170. **to fawn upon a nurse**, *i.e.* with the object of being taught a new language.

172, 3. **What is ... breath?** Your sentence, therefore, which robs me of the privilege of breathing my native air, condemns me to a silence which is but death in life.

174. **It boots thee not**, it does you no good; see note on i. 1. 164: **compassionate**, passionately sorrowful for yourself, bewailing your fate in these passionate terms; the only instance in Shakespeare of the word used in this sense.

178. **take an oath with thee**, pledge yourself by an oath which will be binding upon you when away.

179. **Lay ... hands**; the hilt of the sword in former days, forming with the blade a cross, was used to swear upon; cp. *W. T.* ii. 3. 168, "Swear by this sword"; i. *H. IV.* ii. 4. 229, "Swear, by these hilts, or I am a villain else."

181. **Our part ... yourselves**,—for as regards ourself, we, in banishing you, absolve you of the allegiance due to us. Warburton points out that it is a question much debated among the writers upon the law of nations whether a banished man is still bound by allegiance to the state which sends him into exile.

183. **so help ... God**! with the help of truth and God.

185. **Nor never**, the double negative adding emphasis.

186. **regreet**, mutually greet.

187. **This louring ... hate**, this heavily frowning tempest of your hatred first brewed in your native land.

188. **advised**, deliberate; very frequent in Shakespeare, *e.g.* *K. J.* iv. 2. 214, "More upon humour than *advised* respect." We still use the adverb 'advisedly' in the same sense.

189. **complot**, plot together; though here meaning little more than 'plot.' The Cl. Pr. Edd. remark that "this almost tautological language is used, as in legal documents, to include every form of conspiracy in the oath."

190. **our state**, our greatness, majesty; as in iii. 2. 163, "Scoffing his *state* and grinning at his pomp."

193. **so far as to mine enemy**—so far as I can bring myself to speak to an enemy, I say, etc.

194. **permitted us**, allowed the combat to proceed.

195. **had wander'd**, would have been wandering.

196. **Banish'd ... flesh**, driven from this body which is as a sepulchre to the soul; cp. *M. V.* v. 1. 63-5, "Such harmony is in immortal souls; But while this muddy vesture of decay Doth grossly close it in we can not hear it"; and below, iii. 2. 167, "As if this flesh which walls about our life."

198. **fly**, subjunctive.

199. **along**, "O. E. *and-lang*, from *and* against, facing, in a direction opposite + *lang*, long. At first an adjective ... 'extending away in the opposite direction, far-stretching, extended, continuous,' then used with genitive case as 'the lengthened or continuous extent of,' 'the whole length of,' 'the long way off,' or *absolutely*, 'the long way,' 'lengthwise'" ... (Murray, *Eng. Dict.*).

200. **The clogging ... soul**, this burthen of conscious guilt which will hinder all peace of mind.

202. **My name be blotted**, may my name be obliterated; **the book of life**, the heavenly record of those who have merited happiness hereafter.

205. **all**, used adverbially: **shall rue**, will have cause to regret when he discovers what you really are.

206, 7. **Now ... way.** I cannot go wrong wherever I may wander, for except to return to England, all the world is open to me.

208, 9. **even ... heart**, the grief of your heart is reflected even in your sad eyes: **aspect**, accented on the latter syllable.

211. **spent**, being spent.

214. **wanton**, luxuriant, gay with blossoming trees and flowers.

216. **in regard of me**, out of consideration to me.

220. **bring their times about**, complete their revolutions.

222. **extinct**, extinguished, quenched; used only here in *Haml.* i. 3. 118, "these blazes ... *extinct* in both." In *Oth.* ii. 1. 81, we have the form "extincted" in a metaphorical sense, "Give renew'd fire to our *extincted* spirits."

223. **inch**, small remaining portion.

224. **blindfold death**, death which closes the eyes of all.

227. **sullen sorrow**, morose sorrow; the effect produced by sorrow being ascribed to the sorrow itself; **sullen**, "originally merely 'solitary,' then 'hating company,' or morose" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

229. **to furrow** ... **age**, to plough deep wrinkles of age in my brow.

230. **his pilgrimage**, the weary progress of time.

231. **Thy word** ... **death**, your word will be accepted by him as authority for shortening my life; *i.e.* you can command my death if you so please; cp. i. *H. IV.* i. 3. 68, "let not his report Come *current* for an accusation Betwixt my love and your high majesty." A figure from coinage which *runs* in the king's name. In ii. *H. IV.* ii. 1. 132, the Chief Justice plays upon the word in connection with 'sterling'; "Pay her the debt you owe her, and unpay the villany you have done her: the one you may do with *sterling* money, and the other with *current* repentance."

233. **upon good advice**, upon mature deliberation; *M. M.* v. 1. 469, "I thought it was a fault, but knew it not; Yet did repent me, after more *advice*"; *T. G.* ii. 4. 207, "How shall I dote on her with more *advice* That thus without *advice* begin to love her!"

234. **Whereto** ... **gave**, to which, as a party to the deliberation, you gave your assent.

235. **to lour**, to frown, to be angry at.

237. **You urged me as a judge**, you called upon me to give my opinion in the character of a judge, *i.e.* one bound to exclude all personal considerations: **had rather**, should have preferred.

240. **To smooth** ... **mild**, in order to extenuate his guilt, my opinion would have been expressed in terms less severe.

241. **A partial** ... **avoid**, I wished to escape being falsely charged with partiality; **partial**, used proleptically; cp. *Macb.* iii. 4. 76, "Ere human statute purged the gentle weal," *i.e.* so that it became gentle; *Tim.* iv. 3. 109, "when Jove Will o'er some high-viced city hang his poison In the *sick* air," *i.e.* the air which will thus become sick; and below, iii. 4. 66, "Which waste of idle hours hath quite thrown down," *i.e.* hours which have become idle by the waste of them.

242. **the sentence**, the verdict which I gave.

243, 4. **I look'd** ... **away**, I hoped to hear some of you say that I was too strict in thus condemning my own son.

245. **gave leave**, did nothing to hinder my tongue from, etc.

247. **bid him so**, *i.e.* farewell.

249. **what presence** ... **know**, what we by having you with us cannot ascertain; *sc.* how he is faring.

252. **As far** ... **me**, to the farthest point on land, *i.e.* the port from which he is to embark.

254. **That thou** ... **friends**, as is shown by your saying nothing in return for the greetings of your friends.

255-7. **I have ... heart.** My reason is that, at a time when the tongue should be lavish in the expression of the grief overwhelming my heart, no words, however many, would be enough for my farewells to you.

258. **Thy grief**, the grief which you have to endure, *i.e.* as contrasted with that which I have to endure. Gaunt means that his son's grief is a thing which will last only a short portion of his life, whereas his own grief, since he cannot expect to see his son again, is one which will last the whole remainder of his life.

263, 4. **My heart ... pilgrimage.** My heart, which regards my travels as a compulsory pilgrimage, will sigh when my tongue calls it travelling for pleasure; *i.e.* if my tongue could be brought to call my travels travelling for pleasure, it would be rebuked for falsehood by my heart, which regards such travelling as a compulsory pilgrimage. In **inforced**, there is a contrast with the pilgrimages voluntarily undertaken to the Holy Land or to the shrine of some saint.

265. **The sullen ... home-return.** All you need do is to regard your weary pilgrimage as something which will make your return home the more delightful by way of contrast; **foil**, Lat. *folium*, a leaf, is gold or silver leaf placed at the back of a gem, in a ring, etc., to make its lustre all the more conspicuous; cp. *Haml.* v. 2. 266, "I'll be your *foil*, Laertes; in mine ignorance Your skill shall, like a star i' the darkest night, Stick fiery off indeed."

269. **remember me**, remind me; as very frequently in Shakespeare: **what a deal of world**, what a vast distance.

270. **jewels**, those whom I hold dear; cp. *Lear*, i. 1. 271, "The *jewels* of our father, with wash'd eyes, Cordelia leaves you," said of Regan and Goneril whom Lear held so dear.

271-4. **Must I not ... grief?** My travel in foreign countries will be but as a tedious apprenticeship, at the end of which, when I obtain my freedom, all that I shall be able to boast will be that I have served my time to grief. A 'journeyman apprentice' is one who, in order to learn some trade, is bound for a certain term of years to a master in that trade, from whom at the end of that term, if he has served with diligence, he obtains his freedom, *i.e.* is qualified to set up in the trade; **journeyman**, from F. *journée*, a day, is properly one who is hired by the day.

275. **the eye of heaven**, the sun; so, in *M. N. D.* iii. 2. 188, the stars are called (with a pun) "fiery oes and *eyes* of light."

277. **thy necessity**, yourself in these compulsory circumstances.

279, 80. **Think not ... king.** Cp. Coriolanus's speech to the mob when he is banished, "You common cry of curs! ... *I banish you.*"

281. **Where it ... borne**, in the case of those who shrink beneath it.

282. **to purchase**, to acquire; "from O. F. *purchacer*, later *pourchasser*, 'eagerly to pursue, ... purchase, procure,' Cot." (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*); cp. *R. III.* ii. 1. 63, "I entreat true peace of you, Which I will *purchase* with my duteous service."

286. **Look, .. it**, for the redundant pronoun, see Abb. § 243, and for **what**, § 252.

287. **To lie .. go'st**, is to be found in the direction in which you are going.

289. **the presence strew'd**, the presence chamber of the king strewed with rushes. Before the days of carpets, rooms were strewed with rushes, and to this Shakespeare makes frequent reference, *e.g. Cymb.* ii. 2. 13, "Our Tarquin thus Did softly press the *rushes*, ere he waken'd The chastity he wounded"; *R. J.* i. 4. 36, "let wantons light of heart Tickle the senseless *rushes* with their heels." For **presence**, cp. *H. VIII.* iii. 1. 17, "The two great cardinals Wait in the *presence.*"

291. **measure**, a stately kind of dance with measured steps; cp. *M. A.* ii. 1. 80, where it is described as "full of state and ancientry."

292. **gnarling**, snarling, growling; cp. ii. *H. VI.* iii. 1. 192, "And wolves are *gnarling* who should gnaw the first." The word is imitative of sound.

293. **sets it light**, treats it with contempt.

294. **who can**, *i.e.* no one can; a question of appeal: **fire**, metrically a dissyllable.

296. **cloy**, satisfy to repletion, glut.

297. **By bare . . feast?** by merely fancying that he is enjoying a feast?

298. **wallow**, roll oneself about; especially in mire, mud.

299. **fantastic**, existing only in imagination.

300. **apprehension**, conception.

302, 3. **Fell sorrow ... sore.** Sorrow's cruel tooth never causes the wound to fester so badly as when it bites but does not lance the sore, *i.e.* does not relieve the inflammation as a lancet does when it pierces the afflicted part; Bolingbroke means that there are some sorrows which, when at their keenest anguish, relieve themselves, but that his sorrow is not of that kind.

304. **bring**, conduct, escort; cp. *H. V.* ii. 3. 2, "let me *bring* thee to Staines."

305. **I would not stay**, *i.e.* behind in England.

307. **that bears me yet!** on whose bosom I still rest.

309. **true-born**, and therefore loyal to my country.

SCENE IV.

1. **We did observe**, said to Bagot and Green with reference to the manner in which Bolingbroke when leaving had paid court to the populace. See ll. 23, 24, below.

2. **high**, noble.

4. **next highway**, nearest road.

5. **what store**, what abundance; cp. *T. S.* iii. 2. 188, "great *store* of wedding cheer."

6. **none for me**, none so far as I was concerned: **except**, unless perchance; for the thought, cp. *Macb.* i. 7. 24, 5, "And pity ... Shall blow the horrid deed in every eye, That tears shall drown the wind."

8. **Awaked ... rheum**, stirred up the inclination to weep, which of itself did not show any signs of activity.

9. **Did grace ... tear**, lent to our parting, which had nothing in it of real warmth, the appearance of being heart-felt.

12. **for**, because.

13. **That**, the fact of my tongue disdaining, etc.

15, 6. **To counterfeit ... grave**. To make it appear that I was so overwhelmed by grief that the words of farewell, which I should otherwise have uttered, were swallowed up by emotion.

18. **He should have had**, I would willingly have given him, Aumerle, etc.

20. **'tis doubt**, it is doubtful.

22. **Whether ... friends**. Whether, kinsman though he be to us, his object when he returns home will be to see his friends, or for some much more questionable purpose, *i.e.* that of trying to get possession of the crown; for other instances of the subjunctive used indefinitely after the relative, see Abb. § 367.

24. **Observed . people**, cp. Casca's account of the way in which Cæsar courted the common people, *J. C.* i. 2. 271 *et seqq.*

27. **did throw away**, lavished it upon those who were utterly unworthy of it.

28. **with the craft of smiles**, with smiling looks cunningly assumed in order to win their hearts; **craft**, for the sake of the word **craftsmen**.

29. **underbearing**, endurance; cp. *K. J.* iii. 1. 65, "And leave those woes alone which I alone Am bound to *underbear*"; the only other passage in which Shakespeare uses the word in this sense.

30. **As 'twere ... him**, as though he would carry their affections into banishment with him; Shakespeare does not elsewhere use

affects exactly in this sense, for in *L. L. L.* i. 1. 152, "For every man with his *affects* is born," the word means rather 'inclination,' 'tendency,' and in *Oth.* i. 3. 264, "the young *affects*" = the desires of youth.

31. **Off goes ... oyster-wench**, with haste he doffs his cap to a common fish-wife; **bonnet**, used nowadays only of the head-gear of women, and the caps worn by Highlanders.

33. **And had ... knee**, and he returns their salutation with a low bow. "To illustrate this phrase," says Steevens, "it should be remembered that *courtesying* (the act of reverence now confined to women) was anciently practised by men."

35, 6. **As were ... hope.** As though he was next in reversion for possession of the crown, and on him, next after us, our subjects were to fix their hopes; **reversion**, a legal term for the reverting of property to the original owner at the expiration of a term of years for which it had been leased, or on the death of the lessee.

37. **go these thoughts**, let these thoughts go; let them be banished from our minds, as he is banished from this country.

38. **stand out**, are still in rebellion; cp. *K. J.* v. 2. 71, "his spirit is come in, That so *stood out* against the holy church."

39. **Expedient ... made**, prompt measures must be taken to crush them; for **expedient**, cp. ii. *H. VI.* iii. 1. 288, "A breach that craves a quick *expedient* stop": for **manage**, *K. J.* i. 1. 37, "Which now the *manage* of two kingdoms must With fearful bloody issue arbitrate"; and see below, iii. 3. 179.

40, 1. **Ere further ... loss.** Before that, by being left undisturbed, they avail themselves of the opportunity of strengthening themselves and weakening your power in the country.

43. **for our coffers**, because our treasuries: **too great a court**, too lavish an expenditure in keeping up our state.

44. **largess**, general bounty.

45. **to farm**, to let out on lease, by allowing the revenues to be collected in return for a certain sum of money paid in advance. So, taxes were farmed out to the 'publicani' of the Roman empire. Holinshed says the realm was farmed out to Sir William Scroope, Sir John Bushy, Sir William Bagot, and Sir Henry Green.

47. **in hand**, occupying our attention; cp. *K. J.* iv. 3, 158, "A thousand businesses are brief *in hand*," *i.e.* require to be speedily despatched.

48. **Our substitutes**, those in whom we have vested the government of the country during our absence from it: **blank charters**, charters in which the names of the persons from whom compul-

sory 'benevolences' were to be exacted, and the amounts of the contributions, were left to be filled in by the substitutes.

50. **subscribe them**, enter their names.

52. **presently**, at once; without delay.

54. **grievous**, grievously, dangerously.

55. **suddenly taken**, attacked by a sudden disease: **post haste**, with the speed of a post, or messenger; very hastily; cp. iii. *H. VI.* ii. 1. 139, "In haste, *post haste*, are come to join with you"; to 'post' was to travel with great speed, a 'post,' a carrier, speedy messenger.

58. **Ely House.** "The Bishop of Ely's palace in Holborn, the site of which is still marked by 'Ely Place'" ... (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

59. **in**, into; as frequently in Shakespeare.

60. **To help him to**, to assist him in going to.

61. **The lining**, that with which his coffers are lined, stuffed, *sc.* the money; with a pun on **coats**.

64. **Pray God ... late**! let us pray God that, quickly as we may go, we may find him dead when we arrive.

ACT II. SCENE I.

1, 2. **Will the king ... youth?** Will the king arrive in time for me to spend my last breath in giving salutary advice to his rash and reckless youth? Gaunt is not asking a question to which he expects an answer, but expressing an impatient hope that the king may come in time, etc.

3. **nor strive ... breath**, nor waste your breath in attempting a useless task; the emphatic double negative.

4. **all**, wholly; adverb.

5. **They say**, men say; it is commonly said.

6. **Enforce**, compel; **deep harmony**, the solemn strains of some instrument to which it is impossible not to attend.

8. **For they ... pain.** For men recognize that there must be truth in words which those who utter them do so with much difficulty, *i.e.* which, if they were not true, would not be uttered, when to do so gives the speaker so much pain.

9. **He that ... more**, he, whose speaking is so soon to be interrupted by the approach of death, is listened to with greater attention; for the omission of the preposition after **listen'd**, see Abb. § 199.

10. **to glose**, to use flattering speech; from the substantive 'glose,' a gloss, commentary, interpretation.

12. **the close**, the "dying fall" of *T. N.* i. 1. 4. Cp. *H. V.* i. 2. 182, "Congreeing in a full and natural *close* Like music"; Bacon, *Adv. of Learning*, ii. v. 3. 33, Wright's ed., "Is not the trope of music, to avoid or slide from the *close* or cadence, common with the trope of rhetoric of deceiving expectation?"; Milton, *Ode on the Morning of Christ's Nativity*, l. 100, "With thousand echoes still prolongs each heavenly *close*."

13. **is sweetest last**, longest retains its pleasing effect.

14. **Writ**, the form usual in Shakespeare, the Elizabethan authors, owing to the tendency to drop the inflection *-en*, frequently using the curtailed form of participles.

15. **my life's counsel**, the advice I have so often proffered in my life-time.

16. **undeaf**, cause to listen; to 'deaf' is used in *L. L. L.* v. 2. 874, *K. J.* ii. 1. 147. For the conversion of nouns and adjectives into transitive verbs, see Abb. § 290, and cp. *Sonn.* v. 4, "Time will *unfair* that fairly doth excel."

17. **other flattering sounds**, other sounds and those flattering ones.

18. **of his state; ... found.** The reading in the text is that of the folios and later quartos; the Cambridge editors adopt Collier's conjecture "of whose taste the wise are *fond*," which is the reading of the first quarto with "*fond*" for "found." Delius reads "praises of his state; then there are *fond*," etc.

19. **Lascivious metres**, ballads of a dangerously seductive sound to the ear: **venom**, poisonous, pernicious; used again as an adjective in *R. III.* i. 3. 291, "His *venom* tooth"; *C. E.* v. i. 69, "The *venom* clamours of a jealous woman"; iii. *H. VI.* ii. 2. 138, "as *venom* toads."

20. **open**, readily giving admission.

21. **proud**, *i.e.* of its fine fashions.

22, 3. **Whose manners ... imitation.** Whose manners our nation, having no originality of its own, clumsily mimics when they have there become stale; cp. *J. C.* iv. 1. 36-9, "one that feeds On abjects, orts and imitations, Which, out of use and staled by other men, Begin his fashion"; and *M. V.* i. 2. 79-82, "How oddly he is suited! I think he bought his doublet in Italy, his round hose in France, his bonnet in Germany, and his behaviour every where." "Our author," remarks Johnson, "who gives to all nations the customs of England, and to all ages the manners of his own, has charged the times of Richard with a folly not perhaps known then, but very frequent in Shakespeare's time, and much lamented by the wisest and best of our ancestors."

24-6. **Where ... ears?** Nowhere in the world does any vanity obtrude itself—provided it be new, it matters nothing how vile

it is—but a rumour of it quickly finds its way to his ears; cp. iii. *H. VI.* v. 6. 86, "I will *buzz* abroad such prophecies."

27. **Then**, seeing that this is so: **all**, used adverbially.

28. **Where** ... **regard.** In a case, like his, in which an obstinate will quarrels with that which wisdom holds in estimation; for **mutiny**, cp. *A. C.* iii. 11. 13; for **regard**, cp. *J. C.* iii. 1. 224, "Our reasons are so full of good *regard.*"

29. **Direct** ... **choose**, do not attempt to guide him who is certain to go his own way; we no longer use **himself** (which is properly the old dative) as a nominative without the personal pronoun 'he.'

30. **lose**, spend in vain in talking to him.

31. **Methinks**, impersonal verbs were more common in early English than in Elizabethan English, and more common in Elizabethan than in modern English: **new**, newly.

32. **expiring**, for sake of the antithesis with "inspired": **foretell of him**, prophesy in respect of him. Cp. i. *H. IV.* v. 4. 83, and Campbell's *Lochiel*, "'Tis the sunset of life gives me mystical lore, And coming events cast their shadows before."

33. **His rash** ... **riot**, his dissoluteness which now burns with so violent and fierce a flame.

35. **Small**, light. 36. **betimes**, quickly; literally, 'by times.'

37. **With eager feeding**, when it is swallowed too fast.

38. **Cormorant**, literally, a sea-bird with a voracious appetite; from Lat. *corvus marinus*, a sea-crow.

39. **Consuming means**, having eaten up the substance at its command.

40. **this scepter'd isle**, this island hitherto ruled by kings worthy of the title.

41. **This earth of majesty**, this country so majestic in its grandeur: **this seat of Mars**, this land so worthy to be the home of the god of war, its inhabitants being of so valorous a nature.

42. **other**, second; **demi-paradise**, almost a Paradise; cp. *A. C.* i. 5. 23, "The *demi-Atlas* of this earth," said of Antony.

43, 4. **This fortress** ... **war**, this fortress which Nature has built as a protection for herself against pollution and invasion; it seems hardly necessary to take **infection** in its ordinary sense of infectious disease.

46. **set**, as a precious stone is 'set' in a ring, etc.

47. **in the office**, in the way of, performing the office of, etc.

48. **a moat**, a deep and wide ditch cut round a fortress or a house, and filled with water when an attack was anticipated.

49. **envy**, malice, hatred; a meaning very frequent in Shakespeare: for the double comparative, see Abb. § 11.

50. **this earth** seems a weak expression, and the line is omitted in *England's Parnassus*, 1600, where the rest of the passage is quoted.

52. **Fear'd ... breed**, feared in consequence of the stock to which they belong and which had so often shown itself terrible.

54. **For Christian service**, for service in the cause of Christ, *i.e.* in the crusades for possession of the Holy Land. The line is parenthetical.

55. **stubborn Jewry**, Judæa, the country of the Jews who obstinately refused to acknowledge the divinity of Christ.

56. **Of the world's ransom**, of Him who by His sacrifice of atonement ransomed the world from the doom otherwise awaiting it.

58. **for**, by reason of.

59. **leased out**, see note on i. 3. 35: **I die pronouncing it**, I say this on my death-bed; but also perhaps with the additional meaning that it almost kills him to utter such words.

60. **a tenement**, a (small) holding: **pelting**, paltry; cp. *M. N. D.* ii. 1. 91, "Have every *pelting* river made so proud"; and of persons, *M. M.* ii. 2. 112, "every *pelting*, petty officer."

62, 3. **Whose rocky ... Neptune.** Cp. *Cymb.* iii. 1. 18-20, "your isle, which stands As Neptune's park, ribbed and paled in With rocks unscaleable and roaring waters."

64. **inky blots**, "a contemptuous term for writings" (Boswell), *sc.* the leases by which the realm was farmed out; **rotten**, which have no strength in them.

66. **Hath made ... itself.** Has now of its own act (*i.e.* through the instrumentality of its king) become enslaved.

67. **scandal**, shame; literally, a snare, then offence, stumbling-block.

68. **ensuing**, about to happen; cp. *R. III.* ii. 3. 43, "men's minds mistrust *ensuing* dangers."

Stage Direction. **Bushy**, "Sir John Bushy was Speaker of the House of Commons in 1394, and, with Sir Henry Green, was one of the six commoners appointed to act with twelve peers, as Commissioners in 1398, invested with the whole powers of the Lords and Commons." (French, *Shakespeareana Genealogica*): **Green**, "Sir Henry Green appears to be the second son of Sir Henry Green, Justice of the King's Bench, 23 Edward III." ... *ib.*: **Bagot**, "Sir William Bagot was Sheriff co. Leicester, 6 and 7 Richard II. ... He escaped from Bristol Castle, and joined the king in Ireland, but on his return was committed by Henry IV.

to the Tower, whence he was released November 12, 1400, and being received into favour served again in Parliament. He died in 1407." ... *ib.* : **Ros**, "William de Ros, who succeeded his brother as seventh Lord Ros, of Hamlake ... He was summoned to Parliament from 1394 to 1413. Henry rewarded his services by appointing him Lord Treasurer of England, and a K.G. He stood very high in that monarch's favour, and died at Belvoir in 1414." ... *ib.* : **Willoughby**, "William de Willoughby, fifth baron Willoughby de Eresby, summoned to Parliament from 20 Richard II. to 11 Henry IV., in which year, 1409, he died." ... *ib.*

70. **raged**, exasperated. The word has been suspected and various conjectures offered; but from the constant antitheses of this play, it seems likely that the text is genuine.

72. **What comfort, man?** What cheer? *i.e.* I trust you are not so ill as I have been told; **man**, used in a friendly way.

73. **my composition**, my constitution, the condition of my body as it now is.

74. **in being old**, owing to my age. For the pun, cp. ii. *H. IV.* iii. 2. 349.

75. **hath kept ... fast**, has instituted a fast; by its continuous presence has compelled me to fast from that which would have nourished me.

76. **For sleeping ... watch'd**, for England, which so long has suffered itself to indulge in a dangerous sleep, I have kept watch.

77. **all**, wholly.

78, 9. **The pleasure ... fast**; from that pleasure in which other fathers find such healthful food, I have been obliged to abstain altogether.

81. **And therein ... gaunt**: And I, thanks to you, fasting in this way, have by you been made gaunt.

82. **Gaunt ... grave**, in being so gaunt I am well fitted for the grave, and hollow are my cheeks as a grave.

83. **inherits**, has possession of; cp. *Temp.* iv. 1. 154, "The great globe itself, Yea, all which it *inherit.*"

84. **so nicely**, in such fanciful terms; cp. *T. N.* iii. 1. 17, "They that dally *nicely* with words may quickly make them wanton."

85. **makes sport to mock itself**, amuses itself by self-derision.

86. **Since thou ... me**, since you seek to put an end to my name, to make me the last possessor of my name, by leaving no one to inherit it.

88. **flatter with**, use flattering language towards; cp. *T. N.* i. 5. 322, "Desire him not to *flatter with* his lord."

90. **Thou** ... **me.** You say that you, whom I see to be dying, flatter me, then how can it be true that "men flatter those who die"?

91. **Thou diest,** it is as I said, answers Gaunt, for it is you who are really dying: **the sicker,** *i.e.* of us two.

94. **Ill in myself** ... **ill.** This jingle is difficult; perhaps it means, Ill in myself who see you, and seeing ill in you. Delius explains, 'I am ill in myself to look upon, and therein ill that I see you ill,' which seems against the order of the words. Steevens would eject **to see** as destroying the metre and not improving the sense.

95, 6. **Thy death-bed** ... **sick,** your death-bed is the whole realm of England, throughout the length and breadth of which you are sick in the matter of reputation; **thy** is emphatic as in contrast with Gaunt's own death-bed.

98. **thy anointed body,** see note on i. 2. 38.

99. **Of those** ... **thee**: of those who, pretending to seek your well-being, are the very persons who have injured you.

102, 3. **And yet** ... **land,** and yet, though enclosed in so small a limit as the compass of your crown, that which suffers waste is nothing less than the whole realm over which you rule. "'Waste' is a law term for destruction of houses, wood, or other produce of land, done by the tenant to the prejudice of the freehold" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

104. **thy grandsire,** Edward the Third, Richard being the son of the Black Prince.

105. **seen how** ... **sons,** seen how you were fated to ruin your descendants by wasting their inheritance.

106. **From forth** ... **shame,** he would have removed from beyond your reach that which has proved your disgrace, *sc.* the government of England which you have so abused.

108. **Which art** ... **thyself,** who have come into possession only to depose yourself; with a pun on **possess'd** in the sense of being subject to an evil spirit; **which** = for you.

109. **regent of the world,** *i.e.* not merely regent of England.

111. **for the world,** as the whole of the dominion which you can call your own.

112. **Landlord** ... **king**; by leasing out your realm in the way you have done, you have put yourself in the position of a landlord, and no longer occupy that of a king.

114. **Thy state** ... **law**; the position you legally (of law, *i.e.* by law) hold is now subject, as a landlord's would be, to the control of the law, from which, as king, you were before exempt.

115. **lean-witted,** as gaunt in mind as in body.

116. **an ague's privilege**, that of causing one to shiver and grow pale.

119. **his ... residence**, *sc.* the face; **his** = its; see Abb. § 228.

120. **by my seat's ... majesty**, I swear by the majesty of the throne which I occupy.

121. **great Edward's son**, Edward, Prince of Wales, the Black Prince, father of Richard II. He was born 1330, and died July 8, 1376.

122. **roundly**, freely, unceremoniously; cp. *T. S.* i. 2. 59, "shall I then come *roundly* to thee And wish thee to a shrewd ill-favour'd wife?" On "clear and *round* dealing," Bacon, *Essay of Truth*, Abbott remarks, "*Round* was naturally used of that which was symmetrical and *complete* (as a circle is); then of anything *thorough*. Hence (paradoxically enough), 'I went *round* to work,' *Haml.* ii. 2. 139, means, 'I went *straight* to the point."

123. **Should run ... shoulders**, should speedily cause you to lose your head.

125. **For that**, merely because

126. **the pelican** from feeding its young with fish from its pouch was supposed to allow its offspring to drink its own blood; cp. *Haml.* iv. 5. 146, "And like the kind life-rendering *pelican* Repast them with my blood"; *Lear*, iii. 4. 77, "Those *pelican* daughters," *i.e.* that drained the blood of their own parent.

129. **whom fair befal**, whom I trust happiness may await; cp. *K. J.* i. 1. 78, "*Fair fall* the bones that took the pains for me!"

130. **precedent**, example; cp. *Lear*, ii. 3. 13, "The country gives me proof and *precedent* Of Bedlam beggars."

131. **respect'st not**, do not feel any scruple about.

132. **Join with**, combine with in shortening my life.

133. **And thy**, and *let* thy, etc.: **crooked**, used with reference to the bent attitude of old men, and also with reference to the form of the sickle with which, as with a scythe, Time was sometimes represented.

135. **but die ... thee!** let shame always live with you!

137. **Love they ... have**, let those who are loved and honoured be anxious to live; I am neither loved nor honoured, and therefore I am anxious to die.

138. **that age ... have**, who are possessed by old age and a morose nature; **sullens**, fits of sullen temper.

139. **become**, are suitable to.

142. **wayward**, perverse; "*wayward* is *away-ward*, *i.e.* turned

away, perverse ... It is a parallel formation to *fro-ward*" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

143. **on my life**, I stake my life on the truth of what I say.

144. **As Harry** ... **Hereford**, used by York as an accusative (as dear as he holds his own son), but purposely misunderstood by the king, who takes the words as a nominative.

145. **as Hereford's** ... **his**; one is as true as the other, *i.e.* both are equally false.

146. **As theirs** ... **is.** My love to them shall be as theirs is to me; and let everything be as it is.

147. **commends him**, sends you his salutation.

150. **hath spent**, has exhausted.

151. **Be York** ... **so**! may I be the next to become bankrupt of "words, life, and all"!

154. **our pilgrimage must be**, I have still to make the weary journey of life.

155. **So much for that**, enough of that subject.

156. **supplant**, extirpate; literally, to put something under the sole (Lat. *planta*) of the foot, to trip up the heels, overthrow; **rug-headed kerns**, cp. ii. *H. VI.* iii. 1. 367, "a *shag-hair'd kern*"; 'rug,' a coarse woollen covering, a mat, is cognate with *rough*; so we speak of 'matted hair"; **kerns** were the light-armed foot-soldiery of Ireland and the Western isles; the word is probably from the Irish *cearn*, a man. Cp. *Macb.* i. 2. 13, "Of *kerns* and gallowglasses is supplied."

157, 8. **Which live** ... **live.** An allusion to the tradition that St. Patrick freed Ireland from venomous reptiles; **But only they,** but they alone; the plural is probably due to the word **venom** being regarded as = venomous creatures.

159. **And for** ... **charge**, and since affairs of so great magnitude demand a large expenditure of money; **charge**, in this sense, is very frequent in Shakespeare.

160. **Towards** ... **us**, to help us in their settlement, we confiscate to our use.

164. **tender duty**, compunctious feelings of duty to my sovereign.

165. **Not** ... **nor**, neither ... nor: **England's private wrongs**, "wrongs committed against private men, against quiet citizens" (Schmidt).

167, 8. **Nor the prevention** ... **marriage**, a marriage which, on the death of his first wife, he while in exile wished to make with the daughter of the Duke de Berri, but which was put a stop to by Richard's influence.

169. **Have ever** ... **face**, have ever been able to exhaust my patience and cause me to show sour looks.

170. **bend one wrinkle**, so much as once to frown.

173. **raged**, *i.e. who* raged; for the omission of the relative, see Abb. § 244, and for the omission of the indefinite article before **lion**, § 84.

177. **Accomplish'd** ... **hours**; when of your age; cp. *M. V.* iii. 4. 61, "That they shall think we are *accomplished With* what we lack."

182. **guilty** ... **blood**, were not guilty of shedding the blood of any of his kindred, as your hands are.

183. **But bloody** ... **kin**, but covered with the blood in which he avenged himself upon those who were enemies to his race.

184. **too far** ... **grief**, too completely overwhelmed with grief.

185. **compare between**, make a comparison between you and your ancestors.

187, 8. **if not** ... **withal**, if you do not please to pardon me, I am glad not to be pardoned, am satisfied with the result; **withal**, when used as a preposition is in Shakespeare always at the end of the sentence.

189. **gripe into your hands**, seize and greedily close your hands upon; cp. i. *H. IV.* v. 1. 57, "To *gripe* the general sway *into* your hands."

190. **royalties**, the dignities to which, by belonging to the royal family, he is entitled; cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 176, "The dominations, *royalties*, and rights Of this oppressed boy," *sc.* Prince Arthur.

195, 6. **Take** ... **rights**; if you rob Hereford of his rightful dues, you may as well rob Time of his recorded and customary privileges.

197. **Let not** ... **to-day**; you may as well forbid to-morrow to follow to-day; *i.e.* upset all order of time; for **ensue**, as a transitive verb, cp. *Lucr.* 502, "I know repentant tears *ensue* the deed."

199. **But by** ... **succession**? Except by your having come to the throne in rightful order of succession?

202-4. **Call in** ... **living**, if you stop the issue of those documents in virtue of which he, through his agents, is entitled to claim delivery of his possessions: **letters-patents**, official documents, conferring a privilege, which are open to the inspection of all men; see Abb. § 338; **attorneys-general**, agents appointed with general authority to represent a person in all his affairs and suits, as contrasted with those appointed for a special purpose only; **to sue his livery**, on the death of any person who held by knight's service, his heir, if under age, became a ward of the king; but, if of full age, he had a right to institute a suit that

'the king's hand might be taken off' and the land be delivered to him.

204. **deny his offer'd homage**, refuse to accept from him that homage which he is prepared to offer for the holding of his land. In the tenure by knight's service, the tenant of an estate of inheritance was bound to do homage to his lord, kneeling to him, professing to become his man, and receiving from him a kiss.

206. **lose**, estrange from you.

207. **my tender patience**, my patience which has so long shown itself loving towards you.

208. **Which honour ... think**, which cannot enter the mind of one who is honourably loyal.

210. **plate**, gold and silver articles of household furniture, dishes, plates, etc.

211. **I 'll not ... while**, I will not be present during the time you do it.

213, 4. **But by ... good.** But this at all events may be inferred of bad courses that their issue will never be good; cp. *L. L. L.* iv. 3. 150, "I would not have him know so much *by* me," *i.e.* regarding me; *M. A.* v. i. 312, "In anything that I do know *by* her."

215. **straight**, straightway: **Earl of Wiltshire**, "Sir William Scrope [elder brother of Sir Stephen Scroop or Scrope, who appears on the scene in iii. 2], created Earl of Wiltshire September 29, 1397. He was beheaded in 1399 and his honours forfeited" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

216. **repair**, come; in this sense from Lat. *repatriare*, to return to one's country.

217. **To see this business**, to see to, attend to, this business; *A. C.* v. 2. 368, "Come, Dolabella, *see* High order in this great solemnity": **To-morrow next**, on the morning next to this; 'to-morrow' literally means 'for the morning,' *i.e.* any morning, just as 'to-night' means 'for the night,' and is used by Shakespeare for present, past, and future time, though with us the phrase is confined to the present night.

219. **We will for**, I purpose to go: **trow**, think, am sure.

221. **just**, to be relied upon.

222. **Come on, our queen**; for this vocative, cp. *W. T.* i. 2. 27, "Tongue-tied our queen, speak thou."

223. **our time of stay**, the time that I can remain with you.

226. **Barely ... revenue**, he enjoys the bare title of Duke, but without the revenue which properly goes with it.

228. **great**, *sc.* with sorrow.

229. **with a liberal tongue**, by freedom of speech.

231. **That speak** ... **harm**! who repeats your words with the intention of bringing you into trouble.

232. **Tends** ... **Hereford?** Have the words you would speak reference to Hereford?

233. **out with it boldly**, speak out boldly what you have to say.

235. **No good** ... **him**; I have nothing to say of any good which it is in my power to do him.

237. **gelded of his patrimony**, robbed of that inheritance from his father which is really his.

238, 9. **'tis shame** ... **him**, it is disgraceful that one like him should have to endure such wrongs: **moe**, or 'mo,' was formerly used of number, 'more,' of size.

240. **declining land**, land which is fast going to ruin.

241. **is not himself**, does not allow himself to be guided by his natural instincts.

242, 3. **and what** ... **all**, and whatever information they may, out of pure hatred, choose to lay against us.

244. **prosecute**, follow up by action.

246. **pill'd**, pillaged, plundered; cp. *R. III.* i. 3. 159, "In sharing that which you have *pill'd* from me." From "Fr. *piller*, 'to pill, ravage, ransack, rifle, rob'; Cotgrave.—Lat. *pilare*, to plunder, pillage" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

247. **And lost their hearts.** I have followed Steevens, Dyce, and Grant White in omitting 'quite' before **lost**, but the passage is unsatisfactory. Grant White remarks that the emphatic force proper to a repetition is lost if 'quite' appear in this place.

248. **For ancient quarrels.** "Holinshed says: 'That they had aided ye duke of Gloucester, the erles of Arundel and Warwick, when thei rose in armor against him'" ... (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

250. **As**, such as: **blanks**, blank charters, cp. i. 3. 48: **benevolences**, in reality forced loans, a system of exaction invented by Edward the Fourth in which men of property were asked "of their goodness" to contribute to the needs of the government. They were abolished by Richard the Third, but again imposed by Henry the Seventh, and continued till the days of Charles the First: **and I wot not what**, and a number of other devices; **wot**, know; the first and third persons of the present indicative of the verb to 'wit.'

251. **what** ... **of this**? how is all the money spent that is thus raised? **o' God's name**, on, or in, the name of God.

253. **But basely** ... **compromise**, but he has basely entered into an agreement to surrender. "The allusion here is to the treaty

which Richard made with Charles VI. of France, in the year 1393, and renewed in 1396 upon the marriage of Richard and Isabel" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

254. **achieved**, from "O. F. *achever*, *achiever*, to accomplish. Formed from the phrase *venir a chef*, or *venir a chief*, to come to the end or arrive at one's object. — Lat. *ad caput venire*, to come to an end"... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

256. **hath the realm in farm**, has had the realm made over to him to collect its revenues, see note on i. 3. 45.

257. **broken**, bankrupt.

258. **dissolution**, destruction; **hangeth**, for the singular verb with a double nominative, see Abb. § 336.

260. **notwithstanding**, it spite of; here a preposition.

261. **But**, except.

262. **His noble kinsman**, who is his kinsman, and one far too noble to be so.

263, 4. **we hear** ... **storm**; though we hear the fearful tempest brewing, we take no steps to escape its violence when it comes down; cp. *Temp.* ii. 2. 20, "another storm brewing, I hear it *sing* i' the wind."

265. **sit sore**, bear heavily upon; for **sit**, cp. below, ii. 2. 123, "The wind *sits* fair for news to go to Ireland."

266. **And yet** ... **perish**, and yet we do not take the trouble to strike our sails (*i.e.* take measures to avoid destruction), but in foolish over-confidence allow ourselves to perish. For **securely**, cp. *T. C.* iv. 5. 73, "'Tis done like Hector; but *securely* done, A little proudly, and great deal misprizing The knight opposed," (*i.e.* undervaluing the champion opposed to him); *Macb.* iii. 5. 32, "And you all know, *security* Is mortal's chiefest enemy."

268, 9. **And unavoided** ... **wreck**. And having so foolishly sat still while our ruin was preparing, we cannot now avoid the danger; for **unavoided**, = inevitable, see Abb. § 375, and cp. *R. III.* iv. 4. 217, "All *unavoided* is the doom of destiny."

270. **hollow eyes**, empty sockets; cp. *M. V.* ii. 6. 63, "A carrion Death, within whose *empty* eye There is a written scroll."

271. **peering**, peeping forth; there seems here to be admixture of two verbs, to 'peer' = to look narrowly, and to 'peer' = to appear: **dare not say**, *i.e.* for fear that they should not be ready to join with him in revolt.

272. **tidings**, used by Shakespeare sometimes as a singular, sometimes as a plural, substantive. In its use as a singular it resembles 'news,' which is properly plural, being equivalent to the F. *nouvelles*, new things.

274. **Be confident to speak**, do not hesitate to speak out.

275, 6. **We three ... thoughts**, we three are but as one person, viz. yourself; and this being so, when you speak, your words are but spoken to yourself, are but as thoughts which pass through your mind.

281. **That late ... Exeter.** As the person who lately escaped from the house of the Duke of Exeter, and to whom alone of those mentioned the Archbishop was related, was the son of the Earl of Arundel, Malone supplies the lacuna here by the words "The son of Richard, Earl of Arundel."

282. **late.** "Thomas Arundel, Archbishop of Canterbury, brother to the Earl of Arundel, who was beheaded in this reign, had been banished by the parliament, and was afterwards deprived by the Pope of his See, at the request of the king; whence he is here called 'late of Canterbury'" (Steevens).

286. **tall**, stately and of great burthen; cp. *Lear*, iv. 6. 18, "yond *tall* anchoring bark"; *Oth.* ii. 1. 79, "That he may bless this bay with his *tall* ship"; **men of war**, fighting men; we now use the phrase only of ships of war.

287. **with all due expedience**, with all the haste that they can safely make; cp. *H. V.* iv. 3. 70, "And will with all *expedience* charge on us." In i. *H. IV.* i. 1. 33, and *A. C.* i. 2. 185, the word is probably used in the same sense.

288. **to touch**, to make their way to and land upon.

289. **they had**, would have touched: **but that ... Ireland**, but that they are waiting till the king shall first have set out.

291. **If then we shall shake off**, if therefore we are to, ought to, shake off; for **shall**, in this sense, see Abb. § 315.

292. **Imp out**, *i.e.* we are to imp out; to 'imp,' from A.S. *impan*, to graft, was a technical term in hawking, and consisted in attaching to the broken feather an exact substitute for the piece lost. This was done by inserting one end of an iron needle into the pith of the broken feather, the other end of the needle being inserted into the pith of the feather to be substituted.

293. **Redeem ... crown**, get back the crown, which has been stained by the act, from those to whom it has been sordidly pawned, *i.e.* recover England from the hands of those to whom it had been leased out, by repaying them the money which they had advanced; **broking pawn**, it having been pledged as goods are pledged to a pawn-broker, one who deals by means of pawns, or pledges.

294. **our sceptre's gilt**, the brightness that properly belongs to it; **gilt** is not used here for the gold wash laid on a surface.

295. **look like itself**, wear its natural grandeur.

296. **in post**, with post haste: **Ravenspurgh**, formerly a port

on the Humber; but, like some other ports on the east coast of England, since swept away by the sea.

297. **faint** ... **do so**, shrink, from fear of doing this.

298. **secret**, close, not divulging what I have told you; cp. *M. A.* i. 1. 112, "I can be *secret* as a dumb man."

299. **urge**, suggest, talk of.

300. **Hold out my horse**, if my horse does not break down.

SCENE II.

1. **too much sad**, for 'much' used as an adverb with positive adjectives, see Abb. § 51.

3. **life-harming**, that is injurious to health.

4. **entertain**, maintain, keep up; cp. *M. V.* i. 1. 90, "And do a wilful stillness *entertain*": **disposition**, mood; cp. *A. Y. L.* iv. 1. 113, "But come, now I will be your Rosalind in a more coming-on *disposition*."

5, 6. **To please** ... **do it**; to please the king, I made the promise; but, if I am to please myself, I cannot lay aside my grief.

8. **Save bidding** ... **guest**, except that I have had to bid farewell to, etc.

9. **again**, on the other hand.

10. **ripe**, *i.e.* for birth.

11. **inward**, inmost; cp. *K. J.* iii. 1. 227, "The conjunction of our *inward souls*."

12. **With nothing trembles**, trembles with some insubstantial terror, some terror to which I can give no shape.

14. **substance**, reality.

15. **Which shows**, each of which looks.

16. **glazed**, covered over as with glass.

17. **Divides** ... **objects**, breaks up one thing, entire in itself, into many separate objects; gives many facets to a single thing.

18. **perspectives**, glasses cut in such a manner as to produce an optical delusion, when looked through; **rightly**, directly.

19. **confusion**, an indistinct form: **awry**, obliquely; properly an adverb, compounded of *on* and *wry*.

20. **Distinguish form**, show forms distinctly.

21. **Looking** ... **departure**, not looking at your lord's departure from that point of view from which it should be regarded.

23. **Which**, *sc.* grief: **as it is**, as it really is.

25. **More than ... not**, do not allow yourself to be grieved by anything besides, etc.

27. **for**, in the place of.

30. **I cannot ... sad**, I cannot help being sad: **heavy**, used adverbially.

31, 2. **As, though ... shrink**, As that,—although in thinking, I think upon nothing,—I cannot but faint and cower under a heavy nothing.

33. **'Tis nothing but conceit**, your thought is nothing but a fanciful conception; 'conceit' in its modern sense is the conception a man has of himself, and as that conception is often an unduly favourable one, the word has come to mean vanity.

34. **'Tis nothing less**, it is anything but mere fanciful conception.

34, 5. **conceit ... grief**, a conception of grief, however fanciful, is ever due to some grief which has preceded it.

36. **For nothing ... grief**; for to some insubstantial origin my grief, which is real, is due.

37. **Or something ... grieve**; or the insubstantial grief I feel belongs to something real. Delius takes **the nothing that I grieve** as the subject, and **something** as the object.

38. **'Tis in reversion ... possess**, I have no present possession of it, but am only heir to it in reversion, when it shall pass to me from that which now possesses it.

41. **well met**, *i.e.* we are glad to see you.

42. **is not yet shipp'd**, has not yet taken ship.

43. **'tis better ... he is**, it is a better hope to hope he is.

44. **For his ... hope**, for his designs are in urgent need of haste, his haste in urgent need of good hope.

46. **That he ... power**, that he, who is our hope, might have led back his forces; 'retire' is used reflexively of retreating in *K. J.* v. 3. 13, "The French fight coldly and *retire themselves*": **power**, armed forces, as in l. 124 below, iii. 2. 63, and in the plural, v. 3. 140.

48. **strongly**, with a powerful army at his back.

49. **repeals himself**, recalls himself from banishment; cp. iv. 1. 85. 7, and *T. G.* v. 4. 143, "Know then, I here forget all former griefs, Cancel all grudge, *repeal* thee home again." We now use the word only of a law, edict.

50. **uplifted arms**, arms lifted up in insurrection.

52. **and that**, and that, which.

55. **are fled to him**, have deserted the king's cause and gone over to his side.

57. **And all ... traitors?** and all the rest who have revolted as being factious traitors. This seems to be the meaning if the text is genuine: but the majority of the copies read, 'And the rest of the,' etc., a reading adopted by many modern editors.

59. **broke**, on the dropping of the inflexion *-en*, see Abb. § 343. **his staff**, the emblem of his office as Lord Steward of the king's household.

60. **fled**, *have* fled, to be supplied from "hath" in the previous line.

62, 3. **So .. heir**, so by your gloomy tidings you have proved the midwife to bring my woe to the birth, and Bolingbroke (as being the cause of those tidings) is the ill-omened first-born of my sorrow.

64. **her prodigy**, the portentous embryo with which she was pregnant. The line is explanatory of the previous one.

66. **Have woe ... join'd**, have, in the news you have given me, added a fresh sorrow to that already caused by my husband's departure.

68. **I will despair**, I am determined to give way to despair.

69. **cozening**, cheating; from "F. *cousiner*, 'to claime kindred for advantage, or particular ends; as he, who to save charges in travelling, goes from house to house, as *cosin* to the honour of every one'; Cotgrave. So in modern F., *cousiner* is 'to call cousin, to sponge, to live upon other people'; Hamilton and Legros. The change of meaning from 'sponge' to 'beguile' or 'cheat' was easy" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

70. **A parasite**, a trencher-friend, a toady; from Gk. παράσιτος, eating beside another at table: **a keeper ... death**, one who hinders the approach of a real friend, death.

71. **dissolve**, loosen; for **bands**, see note on i. 1. 2.

72. **lingers in extremity**, protracts to the very furthest limit; for the transitive use of **lingers**, cp. *M. N. D.* i. 1. 4, "She *lingers* my desires."

74. **signs of war**, armour; here the gorget, or piece of armour to protect the throat (gorge); in *H. V.* ii. 2. 192, for ensigns, flags.

75. **careful**, anxious.

79. **crosses**, disappointments.

80, 1. **Your husband, ... home**; while your husband has gone to Ireland to save his kingdom, by subduing the rebels, others come to rob him of what was safe at home; for the insertion of the pronoun after **husband**, see Abb. § 243.

82. **to underprop**, to uphold, act as a prop to an edifice which would otherwise fall in.

83. **Now comes** ... **made**, now is the hour at hand in which he will have to pay the penalty of his former excesses.

84. **Now shall** ... **him**, now will he have to put to the test those who with honied words professed their friendship.

86. **Why, so** ! well, so be it ! **all**, everything.

87. **the commons they are cold**, Pope omits **they are**, and is followed by Dyce.

88. **revolt** ... **side**, revolt and range themselves on, etc.

90. **Sirrah**, sir ; a term generally, but not always, used in a contemptuous or angry way ; sometimes applied even to women.

91. **presently**, at once.

92. **Hold**, stop.

94. **as I came** ... **there**, on my way past the place I stopped there for a time.

95. **to report**, by reporting ; for this indefinite use of the infinitive, see Abb. § 356.

96. **knave** ? the older senses of the word are 'boy,' 'servant,' and so the word is frequently used by Shakespeare ; from A.S. *cnafa*, a later form of *cnapa*, a boy.

98. **God for his mercy** ! an ellipsis, probably of 'I pray.'

101. **So my** ... **it**, provided he had not been provoked to do so by any disloyalty of mine.

102. **my head**, an emphasis on **my**.

103. **What**, ... **Ireland** ? have no tidings of his rebellion been sent to the king in Ireland ? **What**, an exclamation of astonishment ; **Ireland**, here metrically a trisyllable.

104. **How** ... **money**, how shall we manage in regard to money ? how shall we manage to procure money ?

105. **sister**, "this is one of Shakespeare's touches of nature. York is talking to the Queen his cousin, but the recent death of his sister is uppermost in his mind" (Steevens). The Duchess was his sister as being his brother's wife ; **I would say**, I should wish to say.

107. **there**, at Plashy.

108. **will you** ... **men** ? will you go and assemble what fighting men you can find ?

109. **If I know** ... **me**, *i.e.* assuredly I do not know ; **to order**, to arrange.

110. **thrust**, forcibly put into my hands : **disorderly**, all in confusion.

112, 3. **whom both** .. **defend** ; cp. *Macb.* i. 7. 12-6 : **again**, on the other hand.

115. **Whom ... right**, to restore whom to his rights I am enjoined both by conscience and the ties of relationship.

116, 7. **I'll ... you**, I will arrange for your safety.

119. **Berkeley**, see note on iii. 2. 1.

120. **I should ... too**, I also ought to go to Plashy, *i.e.* to look after the affairs of the Duchess.

122. **at six and seven**, in a state of confusion; the idea being that of an even number combined with an odd number; the modern idiom is 'at sixes and sevens.' Delius compares Bacon regarding Pope Sixtus the Fifth, "a fierce thundering friar that would set all *at six and seven*, or at six and five, if you allude to his name."

123. **sits fair**, is in a favourable quarter; cp. *H. V.* ii. 2. 12, "Now *sits* the wind *fair*, and we will aboard": and above, ii. 1. 265.

124. **to levy power**, to raise forces; cp. above, l. 46.

125. **Proportionable**, in any way equal.

126. **all unpossible**, wholly impossible; for *un-* in composition, see Abb. § 442.

127, 8. **our nearness ... king**, the fact that we are so closely bound up with the king by love makes us much hated by those who are hostile to him.

129. **And that's .. commons**: and when you speak of those who are hostile to him, you speak of the fickle common people; cp. *M. V.* ii. 7. 31, "As much as I deserve! *Why, that's the lady.*"

131. **By so much**, in equal proportion.

132. **Wherein**, in which matter, viz. the emptying of their purses.

133. **If judgement ... we**, if the matter rests with their decision, then we too must stand condemned.

137. **little office**, small service.

141. **heart's presages**, deeply-seated presentiments.

143. **That's as York ... Bolingbroke**, that will depend upon the measure of success which the Duke meets with in opposing Bolingbroke.

146. **Is numbering ... dry**, is as futile as an attempt to count, etc.

147. **Where one ... fly**, for every man that stands firm to his cause, a thousand will desert it.

148. **for once ... ever**, for ever and a day, as we say.

149. **I fear me**, for my part, as far as I can see, I fear.

SCENE III.

5. **Draws**, "These wild hills and rough ways blend, as it were, into one idea in the speaker's mind, and he proceeds as if he had said 'journeying over these hills and ways,' etc." (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

6. **fair discourse,** pleasant conversation.

10. **In**, in the case of : **wanting your company**, not having such pleasant companionship as yours.

12. **tediousness and process**, tedious process ; a hendiadys.

13, 14. **But theirs** ... **possess** ; but their travel is made pleasant by the hope of having in the future that advantage which I possess in the present.

15. **to joy**, to enjoy, of enjoying : **is little less in joy**, is scarcely inferior in the matter of joy.

16. **by this**, *sc.* expectation.

STAGE DIRECTION. *Enter* **Henry Percy**. Henry Percy, the "Hotspur" in *Henry IV.*, was the eldest son of the Earl of Northumberland, born about A.D. 1366, and killed in the battle of Shrewsbury, July 21, 1403.

22. **whencesoever**, from whatever place he comes (as to which I know nothing).

23. **fares**, the radical idea of to 'fare' is motion, progress ; so *Par. Lost*, iv. 131, "So on he *fares* and to the border comes Of Eden" ; thence it came to mean the way in which a man gets on in the world, the sense it now bears. We say 'he fared ill' or 'well,' *i.e.* was fortunate or the contrary ; and we use the same expression to mean that his entertainment, that which was given him to eat and drink, was good or bad. As a substantive, the word is used for the price paid for conveyance, as 'carriage-fare' ; for condition ; for food ; and for a person carried. The nearest approach to the original meaning is in impersonal phrases, such as 'it *fares* well with him' ; 'how *fares* it with the happy dead?' ; which are similar to the phrases 'how goes it with him ?' 'all went well with us.'

24. **I had thought** ... **to have learn'd**, on the complete present infinitive, see Abb. § 360.

29. **resolved**, determined.

33. **by Berkeley**, by way of Berkeley Castle.

35. **repair**, see note on ii. 1. 216.

38. **to my knowledge**, so far as I know.

41. **tender**, offer ; see note on i. 1. 32.

42. **raw**, unripe, crude.

43. **elder days**, my days as they grow older.

44. **To more ... desert**, with the result of my service and desert being more fully proved; **approved**, tried, proved to be worthy, as in *M. A.* ii. 1. 394, "of *approved* valour and confirmed honesty"; and frequently elsewhere.

46. **happy**, fortunate.

47. **As in ... friends**; as in the fact that my soul ever gratefully remembers those who have shown themselves to be my loyal friends.

48. **ripens with thy love**, improves simultaneously with the increase of your love; keeps step with it in increasing.

49. **It shall ... recompense**, it (my good fortune) shall ever endeavour to recompense you for your loyal love.

50. **thus seals it**, said as he gives his hand in pledge of his sincerity.

51, 2. **what stir ... war**? What preparations to oppose us has York made with the forces under him?

53. **tuft**, clump, small copse.

55. **Berkeley**, Thomas Berkeley, fifth baron, died in 1416: **Seymour**, "Richard de St. Maur, fifth baron of that surname, born 1355 ... died 1401" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

56. **None else ... estimate**, none else of any renown and reputation as warriors.

58. **Bloody ... haste**, besprinkled with blood from their horses' flanks, and all aglow with the haste they have made.

59, 60. **I wot ... traitor**: I guess that you, in your love, are in eager pursuit of one who has been proclaimed a banished traitor; **pursues**, with a double sense.

60-2. **all my ... recompense**: no other wealth have I at present than words of gratitude, the value of which has not yet been felt (*i.e.* in any substantial manner) by **you**; but that wealth, when it has become something of more intrinsic value than mere words, shall recompense your love and labour in my behalf; for the ellipsis of the inflection in **love**, see Abb. § 397.

65. **Evermore ... poor**, I can still but give you thanks, which are all the wealth of the poor.

66, 7. **Which ... bounty**, and these thanks, until my fortune comes of age (and so inherits its property), must represent all the recompense I can make you.

70. **my answer is ... to Lancaster**; my answer is to the name

of Lancaster, my proper title now ; to that of Hereford I make no answer.

72. **And I must** ... **tongue**, and by that title must I be addressed by you.

75. **To raze** ... **out** ; to deprive you of a single title that belongs to you ; for **title**, Capell proposed 'tittle.'

76. **what lord you will**, by whatever title you choose to be addressed, whether Lord of Hereford or Lord of Lancaster.

78. **pricks**, spurs.

79. **To take** ... **time**, to take advantage of the time when the king is absent from his kingdom. The Cl. Pr. Edd. remark, "We have something like a parallel to the passage ... in *Oth.* iii. 4. 174, 'Lover's absent hours,' *i.e.* the hours of lover's absence. So the 'absent time' is the time of absence, and the idea of 'king' is suggested by the preceding 'regent.'"

80. **And fright** ... **arms**, and terrify our domestic peace by a war which has its birth in the land itself, *i.e.* civil war, not war forced upon us by foreign invasion. Schmidt reads 'self-borne,' with the explanation 'borne for one's self (not for the king)" ; and so Delius.

81. **I shall not** ... **you**, it will not be necessary for me to give you any message to carry.

84. **Whose duty** ... **false**, which makes a mere pretence of duty; **deceivable**, deceptive ; see Abb. § 445.

86. **Tut, tut!** pooh, pooh! *i.e.* it is all nonsense your addressing me in this way when your acts are so much at variance with your words.

87. **Grace me** ... **uncle** : do not pretend respect and affection by addressing me with these titles ; cp. *R. J.* iii. 5. 153, "Thank me no thankings, nor proud me no prouds," said in answer to Juliet's "Not proud you have ; but thankful that you have."

89. **In an ungracious mouth**, when uttered by one who has acted as ungraciously as you have acted : **profane**, profaned, abused.

90. **forbidden legs**, legs which were forbidden to walk this land.

91. **a dust**, a single particle of dust; cp. *K. J.* iii. 4. 128, "Shall blow *each dust*, each straw, each little rub, Out of the path."

92. **more 'why?'** there are more questions to be asked you.

94. **her pale-faced villages**, made pale by dread of the struggle to ensue ; **pale-faced**, used proleptically.

95. **ostentation** ... **arms**, contemptible display of armed forces ; "despicable because paraded in a bad cause and among an unre-

sisting people" (Cl. Pr. Edd.) Delius, and Schmidt doubtfully, take **despised** as hateful; but in this way the antithesis with **ostentation** is sacrificed.

97. **the king** ... **behind**, though absent in his own person, the king is present in that of his substitute.

99. **the lord** ... **youth**, possessed of that lusty youth; cp. i. *H. IV.* v. 4. 18, "I did not think thee *lord of such a spirit.*"

100, 1. **As when** ... **Prince**, no such exploit as this is recorded in history: **that young** ... **men**, he who in his youth was as the god of war among men.

102. **From forth**, from out of.

104. **prisoner to the palsy**, now robbed by the palsy of its freedom of use; cp. *W. T.* ii. 2. 59, "*prisoner to* the womb"; **chastise**, with the accent on the first syllable.

107. **On what** ... **wherein?** On what footing does it stand (*i.e.* how do you make out that it is a fault?), and in what act has it shown itself? For **On**, Johnson proposed 'In,' which Dyce adopts. But **On** seems preferable with **stands**; and when, in reply, York says "in condition," he is referring rather to the latter clause of the question.

109. **detested**, detestable, hateful; see Abb. § 375.

112. **braving**, defiant; cp. *A. W.* i. 2. 3, "Have fought with equal fortune and continue A *braving* war."

113. **As I** ... **Hereford**; the sentence of banishment was passed upon me as Hereford.

114. **But as** ... **Lancaster.** But in returning, I return as Lancaster.

116. **indifferent**, impartial; cp. *H. VIII.* ii. 4. 17, "having here No judge *indifferent.*"

120. **A wandering vagabond**, to be a wretch without house or home; **royalties**, see note on ii. 1. 190.

121. **perforce**, forcibly.

122. **To upstart unthrifts**, to reckless prodigals suddenly raised by the king to honour: **Wherefore was I born?** *i.e.* if I am not to succeed to my hereditary rights, it was a pity I was ever born.

123, 4. **If that** ... **Lancaster**, by the same title (that of birth) by which my cousin claims to be king of England, I claim to be Duke of Lancaster.

126. **Had you first died**, before your brother Gaunt.

127. **He should have found**, he would have been certain to find.

128. **To rouse** ... **bay**, ready to stir in the matter of his wrongs, and to follow them up till they were put an end to.

The metaphor is that of rousing a stag from its lair and pursuing it to its death ; **bay**, from "F. *abois*, *abbois*. Cotgrave says—'a stag is said *rendre les abbois* when, weary of running, he turns upon the hounds, and holds them at, or puts them to, *a bay* ... The original sense of *aboi* is the bark of a dog" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

129. **denied to sue**, refused the right of suing ; see note on ii. 1. 203, 4.

130. **And yet** ... **leave** ; and yet, by letters-patents issued to me, I received permission to do so.

131. **distrain'd**, forcibly seized ; as though for debt.

132. **amiss**, wrongfully ; the word in Shakespeare's day had a stronger meaning than at present; it stands for the M. E. *on misse*, in error.

134. **challenge law** : claim that the law be put in force : **attorneys**, see note on ii. 1. 203.

135. **personally**, in my own person.

136. **To my** ... **descent**, to that inheritance which by virtue of uninterrupted descent is justly mine ;

137. **abused**, ill used.

138. **It stands** ... **right**. It is incumbent upon you to restore him to his rights. Abbott (§ 204) shows that the full phrase is 'it stands on, upon, to me, you, etc., and that while in *R. III.* iv. 2. 59, we have the correct form, "It stands *me* (dative) much *upon* (adverb) To stop all hopes," the phrase in the text is incorrect, **upon** being used as a preposition governing **your grace**.

139. **Base men** ... **great**, low-born men have been raised to high positions by his revenues being made over to them.

141. **I have had feeling of**, I have not been insensible to, etc.

143. **in this kind**, in this way : **braving**, defiant, as in l. 112.

144. **Be his own carver**, carve out his own fortunes ; cp. *Haml.* i. 3. 20, "He may not as unvalued persons do, *Carve* for himself :" **cut out his way**, cut a path for himself out of his difficulties.

145. **To find** ... **wrong**, to get possession of his rights by wrongful action : **it may not be**, such procedure cannot be allowed.

146. **in this kind**, in this way of acting.

147. **Cherish**, foster, give support to.

149. **But for his own**, merely to get possession of what rightfully belongs to him.

150. **strongly sworn**, bound ourselves by the strongest oaths.

151. **And let ... oath!** and I trust that he who breaks that oath may never find happiness of his own.

152. **the issue of these arms**, what will be the result of his thus taking up arms.

153. **mend it**, set matters right.

154. **all ill left**, in every way badly supported.

156. **attach you all**, arrest you all as traitors. "The earlier English sense of 'arrest, seize,' arose in A. F. and Eng., as an elliptical expression for '*attach* by some tie to the control or jurisdiction of a court,' *i.e.* so that it shall have a hold on the party" ... (Murray, *Eng. Dict.*).

157. **sovereign**, princely.

159. **as neuter**, neutral.

160. **please**, subjunctive.

161. **repose you**, reflexively; see Abb. § 296.

163. **win**, persuade.

165. **complices**, accomplices, conspirators.

166. **The caterpillars ... commonwealth**, who feed upon and destroy the state as caterpillars feed upon and destroy the leaves of plants; **caterpillar**, "the M. E. *catyrpel* is a corruption of O. F. *chattepeleuse* ... A fanciful name, meaning literally 'hairy she-cat'" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

167. **to weed**, to pluck up, as weeds are plucked up.

170. **Nor friends ... are**, "neither as friends nor as foes are you welcome to me ... York feels himself unwilling to receive them as friends, and unable to cope with them as foes" (C. Clarke).

171. **Things ... care.** Cp. *Macb.* iii. 2. 11, 2, "Things without all remedy should be without regard"; *L. L. L.* v. 2. 28, "Past cure is still past care."

SCENE IV.

STAGE DIRECTION. *Enter* **Salisbury.** This was Sir John de Montacute, third Earl of Salisbury of that surname, son of Sir John de Montacute, one of the heroes of Cressy. He was one of the few faithful adherents of Richard, and was beheaded in 1400 for joining with Kent and Huntingdon in the conspiracy against Bolingbroke.

1. **stay'd**, remained here.

2. **hardly**, with great difficulty.

3. **yet**, so far.

8. **The bay-trees ... wither'd.** "Some of these prodigies are found in Holinshed; 'In this yeare in a mannere throughout all the realme of England, old *baie trees* wither'd,' etc. (Steevens), bay-trees being evergreens.

9. **And meteors .. heaven**: the fixed stars themselves are frightened by these meteors that shoot athwart the sky; **meteor**, Gk. *μετέωρος*, adjective, raised up above the earth, soaring in the sky. The mention of such portents of evil is frequent in Shakespeare, *e.g. J. C.* i. 3, *Haml.* i. 1. 113-25.

10. **pale-faced**, *i.e.* usually so pale: **looks .. earth**, looks down upon the earth with lurid face.

11. **lean-look'd**, lean-looking; see Abb. § 294.

13. **to lose**, of losing.

14. **The other to enjoy**, the other in the hope of enjoying what belongs to the rich: **by rage and war**, owing to the furious fighting about to ensue.

15. **These signs ... kings**, cp. *J. C.* ii. 2. 30. 1. "When beggars die there are no comets seen; The heavens themselves blaze forth the death of kings."

17. **As well assured**, being thoroughly persuaded.

18. **of heavy mind**, for the omission of the indefinite article, see Abb. § 82.

20. **base**, so far beneath the firmament; but also with the idea of the baseness of Richard's fall.

21. **Thy sun ... west**, mists and vapours encircle your sun as it sinks beneath the western horizon; **lowly**, like "base" in the previous line, is used in a double sense.

22. **Witnessing**, giving token of; cp. *T. G.* iv. 4. 74, "Which, if my augury deceive me not, *Witness* good bringing up, fortune and truth."

23. **to wait upon**, to offer their service to.

24. **crossly**, adversely.

ACT III. SCENE I.

2. **vex**, trouble; see note on i. 1. 138.

3. **must part your bodies**, must part *from*, etc. For the omission of the preposition after verbs of motion, see Abb. § 198.

4. **With too much ... lives**, by dwelling too much on the wickedness of the lives you have led.

5, 6. **to wash** ... **hands**, to free myself from the reproach of unnecessarily taking life.

9. **A happy** ... **lineaments**, a gentleman fortunate in his descent and personal appearance ; **lineaments** was in former times used of the parts of the body generally, not as now of the face only ; and there is nothing in the word which should limit it to the face.

10. **unhappied**, robbed of his good fortune : **clean**, completely ; cp. *J. C.* i. 3. 35, "*Clean* from the purpose of the things themselves."

11. **in manner**, in a way ; to be joined with **Made a divorce** : **sinful hours**, hours spent in debauchery.

13. **Broke** ... **bed**, kept him away from, etc. ; for the form **broke**, see Abb. § 343.

17. **near in love**, possibly **near** is here for 'nearer,' as in iii. 2. 64, v. 1. 88, *Macb.* ii. 3. 146, "the *near* in blood, The nearer bloody."

19. **Have stoop'd** ... **injuries**, have been obliged to submit without resenting it to the wrongs you have done me.

20. **And sigh'd** ... **clouds**, augmenting the clouds of a foreign sky by the breath of sighs from English lungs ; Delius compares *R. J.* i. 1. 139, "With tears augmenting the fresh morning's dew, Adding to clouds more clouds with his deep sighs."

22. **signories**, manors, estates, of which I was the signor, lord; Ital. *signore*, a lord, Lat. *senior*, elder.

23. **Dispark'd my parks.** "To 'dispark' is a legal term, and signifies to divest a park, constituted by legal grant on prescription, of its name and character, by destroying the enclosures of such a park, and also the vert (or whatever bears green leaves, whether wood or underwood), and the beasts of the chase therein ; and laying it open" (Malone).

24. **From my** ... **coat**, removed my family escutcheon from the windows of my house. It was, and still is, a custom in great houses to blazon the coat of arms of the owner in stained glass ; **torn**, probably used with a reference to the word **coat**.

25. **my imprese.** "'An Impress (as the Italians call it) is a device in Picture with his Motto or Word, borne by Noble and Learned Parsonages, to notifie some particular conceit of their own,' etc. Camden's *Remains concerning Britain*, etc., p. 447, ed. 1674" (Dyce, *Glossary*) : **sign**, outward symbol.

28, 9. **This** ... **death**, the fact that you have done this, condemns, etc. ; **the death**, *i.e.* which is the just penalty of such ill doers ; for **the**, denoting notoriety, see Abb. § 92.

33. **take**, receive.

34. **plague**, punish ; cp. *R. III.* i. 3. 181, "And God, not we, have *plagued* thy bloody deed" ; *K. J.* ii. 1. 184, 6, "That he's not only *plagued* for her sin."

35. **dispatch'd**, a euphemism for 'executed.'

37. **fairly** ... **entreated**, let her be treated with consideration and respect ; cp. *R. III.* iv. 4. 151, "be patient and *entreat* me *fair*," etc. 38. **commends**, greetings, courteous messages.

41. **With letters** ... **large**, with letters fully setting forth your goodwill towards her.

43. **To fight** ... **complices**. Theobald would eject this line, among other reasons because it was not till the year following that Henry employed force against Glendower ; but this chieftain was at the time employed with Richard, and Shakespeare may have antedated the expedition undertaken against him.

44. **Awhile** ... **holiday**, let us for awhile go to work and afterwards make holiday.

Scene II.

Stage Direction. **the Bishop of Carlisle.** Thomas Merk, or Merkes, a Benedictine monk of Westminster, appointed to the see of Carlisle in 1397, was for his attachment to Richard deprived of his bishopric, but, after being sent to Westminster to remain in custody of its abbot, was in 1400 released, and pardoned on account of his excellent character.

1. French, *Shaks. Gen.* p. 32, points out that Barkloughly, or Berkeley Castle, about a mile from the east bank of the Severn, would not be opposite the coast of Wales, but to a division of the same county of Gloucester. **at hand**, which is close at hand.

2. **brooks**, endures ; from A.S. *brúcan*, to use, enjoy.

3. **breaking seas**, dashing against and breaking over the vessel.

4. **Needs**, necessarily ; genitive of 'need,' used adverbially, as 'whiles,' 'twice' (*i.e.* twies).

5. **To stand**, at standing ; the indefinite infinitive.

8. **As a long-parted** ... **child**, as a mother long parted from her child ; for a similar transposition, cp. above, iii. 1. 9.

9. **Plays** ... **meeting**, fondly indulges in both tears and smiles in meeting it ; in her excess of joy mingles tears with smiles.

11. **do thee favours**, show my love to you by my caresses.

13. **his ravenous sense**, his voracious hunger.

14. **thy venom**, whatever is venomous in you. The belief in the poisonous nature of spiders was general at this time and long

after; and that they are poisonous in some countries is an established fact. Cp. *W. T.* ii. 1. 40, "There may be in the cup A *spider* steep'd, and one may drink, depart, And yet partake no *venom*."

15. **heavy-gaited**, clumsily moving: **their way**, "foe," in l. 12, being regarded as a collective noun.

16. **annoyance** and 'annoy' were in Shakespeare's day used in a stronger sense than at present. Cp. *J. C.* i. 3. 22, "I met a lion Who glared upon me, and went surly by Without *annoying* (*i.e.* injuring) me." The word is ultimately from the Lat. *in odio; est mihi in odio*, it is hateful to me. Hence Sp. *enoyo, enojo*, anger, offence, injury; Provin. *ennei, enoi.*

18. **Yield**, bring forth.

20. **Guard**, protect it from their touch.

21. **double**, forked; adders are the only poisonous snakes in England.

22. **Throw**, by ejecting poison.

23. **Mock not** ... **conjuration**, do not laugh at my adjuration as being senseless.

25. **native**, "natural, king by right of birth; not 'born in the country.' Shakespeare would remember that Richard was born at Bordeaux [in France]" (Cl. Pr. Edd.). In v. 6. 32, he is called "Richard of Bordeaux."

26. **falter under**, totter under and succumb to.

29. **embraced**, thankfully welcomed and made use of. So, in *M. V.* iii. 2. 109, "rash-*embraced* despair" means despair that had been too readily harboured.

30. **if heaven would**, if heaven should be willing (to help us).

31. **And we will not**, and we are unwilling to do what is necessary on our part.

33. **too remiss**, not sufficiently active; **too** is pleonastic.

34. **security**, over-confidence; see note on ii. 1. 226.

35. **substance**, material resources.

36. **Discomfortable**, discouraging, *sc.* in the words he uses.

37, 8. **That when** ... **world**, that when the sun, which penetrates into all corners, is to us hidden behind the globe, and lights our antipodes; **and lights**, for *that* **lights**, is Johnson's emendation, accepted by most modern editors. If 'that' is retained the meaning will be 'that then lights.'

39. **range**, freely rove about in quest of prey; cp. *H. V.* iii. 3. 12, "And the flesh'd soldier ... In liberty of bloody hand shall *range*."

40. **In murders**, in the commission of murders.

42. **fires**, lights up: **the eastern pines**, the pine trees in the east (where he rises).

43. **every guilty hole**, every secret place where crimes are being committed.

44. **detested**, detestable; for instances of the past participle used as equivalent to an adjective in *-ble*, see Abb. § 375.

45. **The cloak of night**, the darkness of night by which they are screened from observation; cp. *Macb.* i. 5. 54, "Nor heaven peep through *the blanket of the dark.*"

46. **trembling at themselves**, *sc.* on account of the crimes they have committed.

48, 9. **Who all ... antipodes**, who all this time has been rejoicing in the darkness which made his crimes possible, while we (England's sun) have been absent, lighting up another clime (*sc.* Ireland).

51. **sit**, expressing the permanency of the blush; cp. i. *H. IV.* iii. 2. 142, "For every honour *sitting* on his helm."

53. **self-affrighted**, without any accusation being brought.

55. **balm**, the unction with which kings were anointed; cp. *H. V.* iv. 1. 277, "'Tis not the *balm*, the sceptre and the ball."

56. **worldly**, mortal.

57. **The deputy elected**, the vice-gerent chosen by God to represent Him on earth.

58. **For every man**, in counterpoise of every man, as a make-weight to every man; cp. *A. C.* iv. 8. 21, "A brain that nourishes our nerves, and can Get goal *for* goal of youth": **press'd**, as shown by Wedgwood (*Dict.*), in the sense of 'compelled to serve' has nothing to do with 'press' in the sense of 'crush,' 'squeeze,' but is a corruption of *prest*, ready, and *prest*-money was ready money advanced when a man was hired for service, the shilling now given to recruits. "At a later period, the practice of taking men for the public service by *compulsion* made the word to be understood as if it signified to *force* men into the service, and the original reference to earnest money was quite lost sight of."

59. **shrewd**, keen; literally, accursed, then used of sharp temper, bitter words, etc.

60. **for**, in behalf of: **hath in heavenly pay**, has as a soldier in the pay of heaven.

62. **still**, ever.

63. **your power**, your forces, as in ii. 2. 46.

64, 5. **Nor near ... arm**: neither nearer nor farther off than this weak arm of mine (for that weak arm is all the power I can

muster now); for **near**, = nearer, cp. iii. 1. 17, and 'far' for 'farther,' *W. T.* iv. 4. 442, "*Far* than Deucalion off."

65. **discomfort** ... **tongue**, distress of mind prompts my words.

67. **One day too late**, *i.e.* the fact of your coming one day too late; **I fear me**, literally, for my part I fear, **me** making the words more vivid; cp. above, ii. 2. 149.

71. **too late**, being a day too late.

74. **Are gone to Bolingbroke**, have gone over to Bolingbroke's side.

76. **But now**, only a moment ago, *i.e.* before this news was told me.

79. **pale and dead**, deadly pale, pale as a corpse; cp. *Oth.* ii. 3. 177, "Honest Iago, that look'st *dead* with grieving."

80. **All souls** ... **side**, let all those who desire safety, desert me. Cp. *H. V.* iv. 3. 34-6, "Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host, That he that hath no stomach to this fight, Let him depart."

81. **For time** ... **pride**, for time has determined to punish my pride, and has shown its intention by fixing a stigma upon me.

83. **I had forgot myself**, *i.e.* the dignified bearing which a king should show.

85. **twenty thousand**, Delius reads "*forty* thousand" with the folios, and takes "forty" in an indefinite sense, as frequently in Shakespeare.

86. **Arm**, put on your armour, prepare to defend yourself. **puny**, insignificant; F. *puisne* (Lat. *post natus*, born after), a form which we retain in 'a puisne judge.'

87. **Look** ... **ground**, do not be downcast.

89. **High be our thoughts**, then if we are highly placed, let our thoughts correspond with our position.

STAGE DIRECTION. *Enter* **Scroop**. Sir Stephen Scroop was the elder brother of Richard's chief minister, William le Scrope, Earl of Wiltshire, frequently mentioned in this play.

90. **to serve our turn**, to do what is necessary.

91. **betide**, befal.

92. **care-tuned**, tuned by care to mournful utterances; **deliver**, express, communicate.

93. **prepared**, *i.e.* to endure.

94. **The worst** ... **unfold**, the worst news you can relate is nothing worse than worldly loss.

95. **my care**, the cause of anxiety to me.

96. **what loss** ... **care?** *i.e.* it is no loss.

99. **be his fellow so**, in that way be his equal.

100. **mend**, cure.

102, 3. **Cry woe ... day**, though woe, etc., cry aloud against me, the worst that can happen is death, and death will sooner or later come to all.

104. **arm'd**, *sc.* with fortitude.

106. **unseasonable**, coming at a time when such weather is not expected.

107. **the silver rivers**, the rivers which at other times are so silvery clear.

109. **his limits**, its proper limits, as the banks are to rivers.

112. **White-beards**, even those whose beards are white with age: **thin and hairless scalps**, scalps thinly covered with hair, or with no hair at all.

114. **to speak big**, to imitate the accents of men.

114, 5. **and clap ... crown**, and hastily encase their limbs, tender as those of women, in stiff unwieldy armour in order to fight against, etc. For **clap**, cp. *H. VIII.* i. 4. 9, "The very thought of this fair company *Clapp'd* wings to me."

116. **Thy very beadsmen**, even those who are in duty bound to pray for you; they receiving a stipend for that express purpose. The old sense of 'bead' was 'prayer,' and the beads used in counting prayers were so called from that use.

117. **double-fatal**, doubly-fatal; the berries of the yew tree being poisonous, and bows being made from its wood for use in war.

118, 9. **Yea, distaff-women ... seat**: even women who should be occupied in wielding the distaff, now handle pikes, that have long lain idle, against your throne; **bills**, "an obsolete military weapon used chiefly by infantry; varying in form from a simple concave blade with a long wooden handle, to a kind of concave ax with a spike at the back and its shaft terminating in a spear-head" (Murray, *Eng. Dict.*).

122-5. **Where is ... steps?** What has happened to them in consequence of which they have allowed the dangerous enemy to march up and down our territory without offering any opposition; *i.e.* how comes it that they have offered no opposition to, etc. For **Measure**, cp. *Temp.* ii. 1. 259, "A space whose every cubit Seems to cry out, 'How shall that Claribel *Measure* us back to Naples'?" Bagot had by this time escaped to Ireland, and as the king, in l. 132, speaks of "*three* Judases," Theobald would read "where is *he got?*"

126. **prevail**, are victorious in the contest.

128. **Peace have they made**, etc. For a similar equivoque, cp.

Macb. iv. 3. 178, 9, "*Macb.* The tyrant has not batter'd at their peace? *Ross.* No; they were well at peace (*i.e.* in death) when I did leave them"; and *A. C.* ii. 5. 33, "*Mess.* First, madam, he is well. *Cleo.* Why, there's more gold. But, sirrah, mark, we use To say the dead are well."

129. **without**, beyond. 130. **won**, induced.

131. **in my ... warm'd**, whom I affectionately cherished, who owe all their good fortune to my love; **heart-blood**, cp. i. 1. 172.

132. **Judas**, *sc.* Iscariot, the disciple who betrayed Christ.

133. **Would ... peace**? were they so anxious to make peace with Bolingbroke?

133, 4. **terrible ... offence**! for this offence may hell with all its terrors make war upon their souls foully spotted with treachery!

135, 6. **Sweet love ... hate**; I see that sweet love when it changes its nature becomes, etc.; **property**, that which is proper to it, peculiarly its own. An adaptation of the proverb *Corruptio optimi pessima.*

137. **uncurse**, remove your curse from; cp. "unswear," *K. J.* iii. 1. 245; "unshout," *Cor.* v. 5. 4.

137, 8. **their peace ... hands**: the peace which I spoke of as being made by them was one made by the loss of their heads, not by the lifting up of their hands in submission.

140. **full low**, as low as it is possible for them to lie.

141. **Is**, for the inflection in *-s* preceding a plural subject, see Abb. § 335.

144. **No matter where**, it is of no importance where he is: **no man**, *let* no man.

146. **Make dust our paper**, use dust for our paper: **rainy**, tearful.

148. **Let 's choose ... wills**: *i.e.* make all preparations for death.

153. **that small model**, "That small portion of the earth heaped into the form of the human body: by this expression the poet presents to the eye of imagination that little mound, just the length and breadth of a man's corpse, which is all that remains as his" (C. Clarke). For **model**, cp. *H. V.*, ii. *Chor.* 16, "O England! *model* to thy inward greatness." In **paste** there is probably an allusion to 'coffin' in the sense of a mould of paste for a pie; cp. *T. A.*, v. 2. 189, *T. S.* iv. 3. 82.

155. **For God's sake**, I adjure you in the name of God.

158. **Some haunted ... deposed**; some haunted by the ghosts of those whom they have deposed.

159. **sleeping kill'd**, murdered while asleep.

161. **rounds**, encircles; cp. *M. N. D.* iv. 1. 56, "For she his

hairy temples then had *rounded* With coronet of fresh and fragrant flowers."

162. **the antic**, the fantastic creature ; cp. i. *H. VI.* iv. 7. 18, "Thou *antic* Death, which laugh'st us here to scorn." "Douce suggests that this image was suggested to Shakespeare by the seventh print in the Imagines Mortis (attributed to Holbein, but without authority). There a king is represented sitting on his throne, sword in hand, with courtiers round him, while from his crown rises a grinning skeleton" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

163. **Scoffing his state**, making mock of his (the king's) splendour.

164. **a breath**, a brief moment ; cp. *H. V.* ii. 4. 146, "A night is but *small breath* and little pause To answer matters of this consequence."

165. **To monarchize**, to play the monarch.

166. **Infusing ... conceit**, filling him with empty self-conceit ; we should now say 'infusing into him self-conceit,' etc. For **self**, as an adjective, a use very common in Shakespeare, cp. *Macb.* iii. 4. 142, "My strange and *self* abuse."

167. **walls about**, is as a wall around.

168. **humour'd thus**, he (the king) being thus, etc.

170. **his castle wall**, his body which he regarded as an impregnable fortress : **and farewell king** ! and there is an end to the mighty monarch !

171. **Cover your heads**, do not stand bareheaded before me in token of your respect.

171, 2. **mock not ... reverence**, do not mock me, who am but flesh and blood like yourselves, with a display of, etc.

173. **Tradition**, all traditional marks of honour : **form**, formalities of respect.

175. **I live .. want**, this and the following line are each wanting in two syllables, and various re-arrangements of ll. 175-7 have been proposed in order to readjust the metre ; possibly 'like you' should be repeated before **feel want** : **with bread**, by bread ; see Abb. § 193.

176, 7. **Taste**, experience : **subjected ... king**, to me who am subject to all these infirmities, how can you say that I am king ; with a play on the word 'subject' as contrasted with **king**.

179. **But presently ... wail**, but without delay remove the causes for grieving ; **prevent**, literally go before, and so hinder another.

180. **since fear ... strength**, since the effect of fear is to paralyze strength.

181. **in your weakness**, through the weakness thus produced in you.

182. **your follies**, in giving way to fear.

183. **Fear** ... **fight**, give way to fear, and the result is that you will be killed; no worse fate can attend you if you take courage and fight; **fight**, the verb used substantively.

184. **And fight** ... **death**, and to die fighting is to overcome death by robbing it of its victory. Cp. i. *Corinthians*, xv. 55, "O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory?"

185. **Where** ... **breath**, whereas to die fearing is to pay ignominious homage to death; in **breath** there is the double allusion to expiring and to the use of servile language to some one dreaded.

186. **of**, from.

187. **And learn** ... **limb**, and learn to make a limb serve the purpose of a whole body.

188. **Thou chidest me well**, your reproaches are well deserved; said to Carlisle.

189. **To change** ... **doom**, to meet you in combat to decide which of us is to fall.

190. **is over-blown**, has passed over; the comparison being to a storm: for **ague fit**, cp. above, ii. 1. 96.

191. **our own**, what properly belongs to us.

194. **complexion**, appearance.

195. **inclination of the day**, how the day is likely to turn out.

196. **by my** ... **eye**; by the sadness of my looks: **dull and heavy**, carrying on the simile of the weather.

198. **by small and small**, by telling you my news bit by bit.

201. **And all** ... **up**, and all the castles in the north which were held in your behalf have been yielded up.

202, 3. **And** ... **party**, and all your supporters among the gentry of the south have taken up arms on his side.

204, 5. **Beshrew** ... **despair**! evil befal you for having led me out of that path to despair which I was pleasantly beginning to tread; to 'beshrew' was used as a slight, sometimes very slight, malediction, *e.g. M. V.* iii. 2. 14, "*Beshrew* your eyes They have o'erlook'd me and divided me," said playfully by Portia to Bassanio.

206. **What** ... **we now**? what have you now to say to us in the way of comfort? there can be none left us now.

208. **be of comfort**, be of good cheer, be comforted.

210. **A king** ... **obey**, Boswell compares *K. J.* iii. 1. 69, "For grief is proud, and makes its owner stoop."

211. **That power** ... **discharge**, dismiss such forces as I still have.

212. **To ear** ... **grow**, to plough that land which has some hope

of producing a crop; or perhaps, let those who have some hope that is capable of growth, go to plough the soil in which it has been sown; 'hope' being a noun, and 'hath' a plural. For **ear** (which in this sense is connected with the Lat. *arare*, Gk. ἀρόω, to plough), cp. *A. W.* i. 3. 47, "He that *ears* my land spares my team."

214. **To alter this**, to change my determination: **counsel**, advice.

215. **double wrong**, in comforting me only to depress me all the more.

218. **night**...**day**, used figuratively.

SCENE III.

1. **So that**, so it turns out that.

7. **beseem**, become, be proper in.

8, 9. **alack** .. **head**, alas for the grievous time when such a sacred head is obliged, etc. For **should**, meaning 'be obliged to,' see Abb. § 326.

10. **mistakes**, the *-es* sonant, as in i. *H. VI.* i. 3. 5; more common in substantives, and especially in proper names.

11. **The time hath been**, once upon a time: cp. *Macb.* iii. 3. 79, "*The times have been* That, when the brains were out, the man would die."

12. **Would you have been**, if you had thought fit to be.

13. 4. **to shorten** ... **length**, as to shorten you by the whole length of your head for so curtailing his title.

15. **Mistake** ... **should**, do not unnecessarily misinterpret his words.

16, 7. **Take not** ... **heads**, do not arrogate to yourself more than properly belongs to you, lest in so doing you make the mistake of thinking that heaven is not above us (ready to punish arrogance).

20. **what**, an exclamation of surprise.

26. **lime and stone**, *i.e.* of the walls made of blocks of stone united by lime.

29. **Of holy reverence**, holy and reverend.

30. **belike**, probably; literally, by like, *i.e.* by what is likely.

32. **rude ribs**, rough exterior; but also with an allusion to the figurative sense of 'rude,' in that they kept out those who wished to enter, and possibly with an allusion to the name of the castle. For **ribs**, cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 384, "The flinty *ribs* of this contemptuous city."

33. **send** ... **parley**, sound a parley; for **parley**, see note on i. 1. 192.

34. **his ruin'd ears**, which shall pierce the battered loop-holes of the castle; carrying on the metaphor in "ribs." So in *M. V.* ii. 5. 34, "ears" is used of the casements of a window: **deliver**, pronounce this message.

37. **sends allegiance**, proffers loyal submission.

38. **hither come**, who has come here; to be joined with the words "Henry Bolingbroke." Of the change here from the third to the first person C. Clarke remarks, "The effect produced has freedom, strength, and colloquial naturalness—all of which are essentially dramatic."

39. **Even at his feet**, as low as at his feet, *i.e.* in the humblest way possible.

40, 1. **Provided ... granted**, provided that the repeal of my banishment and the restoration of my lands be unconditionally granted.

42. **the advantage of my power**, the advantage which my power gives me.

43. **And lay ... blood**, Delius compares *Lear*, iv. 6. 201, "To use his eyes for garden water-pots, Ay, and laying autumn's dust."

45-8. **The which ... show.** As to which, how far I am from wishing that this fair land should be drenched with blood, my humble submission will show. For **The which**, in this sense, see Abb. § 272; **fair** qualifies **land.**

49. **signify as much**, make this much known to him.

52, 3. **That ... perused**, so that the king and his followers may from the time-worn, ragged, battlements be able to see clearly how well-appointed my forces are; **tatter'd**, now used only of things liable to be torn, clothes, etc., and so generally by Shakespeare; **perused**, thoroughly scanned; cp. ii. *H. IV.* iv. 2. 94, "March by us, that we may *peruse* the men We should have coped withal."

54-7. **Methinks ... heaven.** To me it seems that the meeting of two such antagonists as Richard and myself should be as terrible as that of lightning and rain when, by the thundering shock with which they clash, the heavy clouds are rent asunder. The imagery is unscientific, since it is not by the meeting of fire and water that the clouds are torn, but by the clash of the clouds that the lightning is generated.

58. **Be he the fire**, let him by his wrath represent the lightning.

60. **not on him**, *i.e.* not causing him annoyance.

61. **mark ... looks**, for the redundant object, see Abb. § 414.

62-7. **See ... occident.** Dyce gives this speech to Percy, while Hanmer, Knight, and Singer make York's speech begin at l. 62

and continue to l. 71. Either arrangement seems better than making Bolingbroke the speaker.

63. **blushing**, red with fury: **discontented**, angry.

64. **the fiery portal**, the gateway of the east which he enters at his rising, and which is thus made fiery; **fiery**, proleptic.

65. **are bent**, are determined; we now say 'bent on doing,' not 'bent to do.'

66, 7. **to stain** ... **occident**, to befoul the track along which he passes to his setting in the west; **occident**, literally 'falling' (of the sun).

69, 70. **lightens** ... **majesty**, flashes forth looks of awe-inspiring majesty; **majesty**, here metrically a dissyllable.

70, 1. **alack**, ... **show**! alas, a woeful thing it would be that so fair an appearance as he presents should be marred by any harm; **alack, for woe**, alas, for the woe that would result; for **alack**, see note on iii. 3. 8.

72. **amazed**, utterly bewildered; see note on i. 3. 81.

72, 3. **thus long** ... **knee**, thus long have we stood expecting to see your knee bowed in awe of us.

74. **Because** ... **king**, because till now we supposed ourself to be, etc.

76. **awful**, reverential, full of awe.

77, 8. **show us** ... **stewardship**, produce evidence to show that God has dismissed us, etc.; **hand**, sign manual, *i.e.* authority.

81. **Unless** ... **usurp**, except by being guilty of sacrilege, theft, or usurpation,—call it which you will.

83. **Have torn** ... **us**, have done violence to their souls by wrenching them from their allegiance. Probably, as the Cl. Pr. Edd. and Schmidt think, the use of **torn** here is for the sake of the jingle with **turning**.

84. **And we are**, and *that* we are.

88, 9. **Your children** ... **head**, the unborn and unbegotten children of you who dare to raise your subject hands.

90. **threat the glory**, threaten to mar the glory.

91. **yond**, yonder; adverb, *yon* being the adjective.

93. **dangerous treason**, treason dangerous in its consequences to him who is guilty of it.

94. **testament**, will; **bleeding**, bloody. "Bolingbroke," says Steevens, "is to open the testament of war, that he may peruse what is there decreed in his favour." In plain language, he has come to begin a bloody struggle. Delius compares Kyd's *Jeronimo*, "Then I unclasp the purple leaves of war."

95. **But ere** ... **peace**, but before he shall peacefully wear the crown he is expecting to win.

96. **crowns**, heads.

97. **Shall ill** ... **face**, shall disfigure the flower-decked surface of England's soil. There may also possibly be in **the flower of England's face** a reference to 'the choicest youth of England,' by which Warburton explains the phrase.

98. **maid-pale**, pale as the face of a frightened maiden. The Cl. Pr. Edd. compare i. *H. VI.* ii. 4. 47, "I pluck this *pale* and *maiden* blossom here."

100. **faithful English blood**, the blood of loyal Englishmen.

102, 3. **Should so** ... **upon**! Should in this way be attacked by barbarous arms wielded in civil warfare; for **uncivil**, cp. *T. N.* iv. 1. 57, "In this *uncivil* and unjust extent Against thy peace."

105, 6. **And by** ... **bones**, and swears by the tomb in which your royal grandsire's bones are honourably laid.

107. **royalties** ... **bloods**, the royal descent which both of you in common have.

108. **head**, source.

109. **by the** ... **Gaunt**, by the hand of warlike Gaunt now lying in his grave.

110. **worth**, personal merits.

111. **Comprising** ... **said**, in which is comprised everything that may serve as the subject of an oath or asseveration.

112. **scope**, aim, mark.

113. **his lineal royalties**, the princely dignities that belong to him by descent.

114. **Enfranchisement**, freedom from all disabilities, such as banishment, and so restoration of his rights: **on his knees**, to be taken with **to beg**.

115. **on thy royal party**, by you, the king, on your part; by you as party to the agreement.

116. **will commend to rust**, will lay by and consign to rust; to 'commend,'=to commit, entrust to one's charge, make over with praise, and so simply to praise, is a doublet of 'command,' from Lat. *commendare*, from *cum*, with, and *mandare*, to commit, entrust.

117. **barbed**, accoutred; "also spelt *barded*, the older form ... Cotgrave has: '*Bardé*,' masculine, *-ée*, feminine, barbed, or trapped as a great horse.' F. *barde*, horse-armour" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

118. **To faithful service**, for the omission of the definite article, see Abb. § 89.

119. **This ... just**, this, on his honour as a prince, he swears is true; for **just** = true, cp. ii. *H. IV.* v. 3. 126, "the things I speak are *just*"; *Tim.* v. 1. 17, "a *just* and true report."

121. **returns**, *sc.* answer, replies.

122. **right welcome**, thoroughly welcome.

123. **fair demands**, demands which I admit to be just.

124. **shall be ... contradiction**, shall be granted fully and without reservation.

125. **With all ... hast**, in the most gracious terms that you have at your command.

126. **Speak ... commends**, convey kind messages to him who is sure to listen to them with a kind ear.

128. **so poorly**, so humbly.

130. **and so die**, and die in maintaining our challenge.

136. **words of sooth**, conciliatory words; 'sooth,' first an adjective, = true, then a substantive, = truth; "to 'soothe,' originally 'to assent to as being true,' hence to say yes to, to humour by assenting, and generally to humour" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*). Cp. *Per.* i. 2. 44, "When Signior *Sooth* here does proclaim a peace, He flatters you."

137. **my name**, my title.

140. **scope**, room to move in, free play; cp. *R. III.* iv. 1. 35, "That my pent heart may have some *scope* to *beat*."

147. **a set of beads**, a string of beads, a rosary by means of which the number of prayers said was counted; see note on "beadsman," iii. 2. 116: **for**, in exchange for.

149. **My gay apparel.** Steevens quotes Holinshed, "he had one cote which he caused to be made for him of gold and stone [*i.e.* adorned with precious stones], valued at 30,000 marks." Stowe says "*three* thousand markes."

150. **figured goblets**, highly-chased gold and silver drinking-cups: **dish of wood**, wooden platter, or perhaps, drinking vessel.

151. **palmer's**, pilgrims to the Holy Land on their return bore with them a palm branch in token of their having visited the Holy Sepulchre; hence 'palmers' = pilgrims generally. The palm-branches were in memory of those carried by the people who went forth to meet Christ as he rode into Jerusalem before his crucifixion; see *John*, xii. 12. 3.

152. **carved saints**, images of saints carved in wood, ivory, etc., and put up in the cells of hermits, etc., for adoration.

153. **a little grave**, a humble grave, such as hermits dug for themselves.

155. **in the king's highway**, the public road.

156. **of common trade**, commonly trodden upon; from the A. S. *tredan*, to tread; cp. *H. VIII.* v. 1. 36, "Stands in the gap and *trade* of moe preferments."

157. **May hourly ... head.** Johnson remarks that Shakespeare is very apt to deviate from the pathetic to the ridiculous; but Richard's exaggeration here is quite in keeping with his character as presented by Shakespeare.

158. **For on ... live**; for now, while I am still living, they trample on my dearest feelings.

159. **And buried once**, and when I am once buried: **why not**, there is no reason why they should not, etc.

161. **despised tears**, tears at which our enemies mock.

162. **they**, our tears; **lodge**, lay; cp. *Macb.* iv. 1. 55, "Though bladed corn be *lodged*."

164, 5. **Or shall we ... tears**? or shall we indulge in frivolous trifling about our sorrow, and make some fanciful compact about shedding tears?

166. **As thus, ... place**, as, for instance binding ourselves to go on continually dropping them, etc.

167. **fretted**, worn; to 'fret,' literally, to eat away, from A.S. *fretan*, ... contracted from *for-etan* ... from *for-*, intensive prefix, and *etan*, to eat" ... Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

168, 9. **and therein ... eyes**, and, we being therein laid, it will be said there lie two kinsmen who dug their graves with, etc.; the relative, as so frequently, omitted after **kinsmen**. The inflection in *-s* with a plural subject is here due to the requirements of rhyme; cp. *V. A.* 1128, "She lifts the coffee-lids that close the eyes, Where, lo, two lamps, burnt out, in darkness *lies*."

170. **Would not ... well**? Would not this foolish trifling be a suitable employment for us?

172. **Most mighty prince**, said, as "King Bolingbroke" in the next line, with ironical humility.

175. **make a leg**, curtsey to me, make an obeisance; **says ay**, assents.

176. **the base court**, the lower courtyard, the court on the ground floor; F. *bas cour*: **doth attend**, is waiting.

178, 9. **like ... jades**, like bright Phaethon unable to manage his fractious steeds. Phaethon (*i.e.* 'the shining one'), son of Helios (the Sun), asked his father to allow him for one day to drive the chariot of the sun across the heavens; but, he being unable to control the steeds, the chariot was borne out of the usual track, and Phaethon fell to the earth; **manage**, a term very frequent in Shakespeare for the control of horses; **jades** is generally used of worn-out or unruly horses.

181. **To come ... grace**, in coming at the summons of traitors and doing them homage (as I do now).

182. **Down, court! down, king!** what, I am to come down to the base court! the king is to come down!

183. **For night-owls ... sing.** For everything in nature is awry, night-owls shrieking at a time when, and in a place where, larks should be mounting aloft with a blithe carol; and therefore there is nothing strange in a king being compelled to come down at the bidding of a traitor subject.

185. **fondly**, foolishly; the original sense of the word.

186. **Yet he is come**, yet in spite of his being almost out of his mind, he is come.

187. **apart**, aside, at a distance from us. "The phrase is borrowed from the F. *à part*, which Cotgrave gives, and explains by '*apart*, alone, singly,' etc. — Lat. *ad*, to; and *partem*, accusative case of *pars*, a part" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

188. **show fair duty**, behave with all becoming reverence.

191. **To make**, in making; the indefinite use of the infinitive.

192. **Me rather had**, for this ungrammatical remnant of ancient usage, see Abb. § 230.

193. **my unpleased eye**, my eye which is no way pleased at seeing this mockery of reverence.

194. **your heart is up**, your ambition is soaring aloft.

195. **Thus high at least**, pointing to his head.

196. **but for mine own**, only to claim what rightfully belongs to me.

197. **Your own ... all**, not only what is rightfully yours, but I and everything are in your hands.

198, 9. **So far ... love**, I would have you 'mine' so far as my loyal service shall deserve your love, and in no other sense 'mine.'

203. **Tears show ... remedies**, tears indicate love, but are powerless in the way of remedy.

204. **too young**, Richard and Bolingbroke were of the same age, being both born in 1366.

206. **What you will have**, what you are determined to have: **willing**, willingly; with a play on **will**.

207. **what force ... do**, what under the compulsion of force we must do.

208. **Set on towards**, set out for; cp. *W. T.* iv. 4. 682, "Thus *set we on*, Camillo, to the sea-side": **is it so**, is not that what you have determined that we shall do?

SCENE IV.

3. **bowls**, a favourite game in Shakespeare's day, and one to which he makes frequent allusion.

4. **full of rubs**, full of friction; to 'rub' and a 'rub' were technical terms at bowls, used of bowls when jostling against one another or against the 'jack,' or 'mistress,' the small bowl at which they were aimed.

5. **against the bias**, in a direction contrary to that which it ought to take. The **bias** was a weight let into the bowl in order to give it sway, and so enable it by taking a curved path to get near the jack when from other balls being in the way, or owing to irregularity of the ground, it could not approach in a direct line.

7, 8. **My legs ... grief**: my legs cannot keep time to any joyous dance at a time when my heart is overwhelmed with grief. A **measure** was a stately dance with slow, measured steps, though the word was sometimes used of a dance in general, and in this sense it is employed in the former line, while in the latter it means limit, extent. There is a similar play upon the word in *M. A.* ii. 1. 74; see the whole passage, ll. 72-83.

13. **being altogether wanting**, since it is completely absent.

14. **remember**, remind; cp. i. 3. 269, above.

15. **being altogether had**, since I am in complete possession of it; since there is nothing in the way of grief which is not present to me.

18. **And what ... complain**, and about that which is lacking there is no use in complaining; for **complain**, used transitively, cp. *Lucr.* 1839, "And by chaste Lucrece' soul that late *complain'd* Her wrongs to us;" for **boots**, see i. 3. 174, above.

20. **Shouldst please**, would be certain to please.

22, 3. **And I could ... thee.** I have such abundance of tears of my own, ready to fall, that if weeping could relieve my sorrow, and help to make me joyous, I should be able to sing for joy without needing to borrow such helps from you or any one.

26. **My wretchedness ... pins**, I will wager my wretchedness against a row of pins; *i.e.* something of which the magnitude is infinite against something of very trifling nature. Cp. the proverb, "It was Lombard Street (*i.e.* a very rich street where the bankers most did congregate) to a China orange (*i.e.* something of small value)."

27. **State**, state affairs.

28. **Against a change**, in anticipation of a change; cp. *M. N. D.* iii. 2. 99, "I'll charm his eyes *against* she do appear": **woe is**

forerun with woe, woe is heralded by woe, *i.e.* sorrowful talk.

29. **apricocks**, from "F. *abricot*, .. from Port. *albricoque*, an apricot ... These words are traced, in Webster and Littré, back to the Arabic *al-barqûq* .. where *al* is the Arabic definite article, and the word *barqûq* is no true Arabic word, but a corruption of the Mid. Gr. πραικόκιον, pl. πραικόκια; borrowed from the Lat. *præcoqua*, apricots, neuter plural of *præcoquus*, another form of *præcox*, lit. precocious, early-ripe" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

30. **their sire**, the parent tree.

31. **their prodigal weight**, their lavish, excessive weight; with an allusion to the burden that prodigal sons are to their parents.

32. **supportance**, support in the way of a prop.

34. **sprays**, the lesser branches.

35. **look too lofty**, are of too ambitious a growth.

36. **even**, uniform.

37. **You thus employ'd**, you *being* thus, etc.: **away**, completely.

38. **noisome**, noxious, injurious; "formed from the M. E. *noy*, annoyance, injury; with the E. suffix *-some* ... *Noy* is a mere contraction of M. E. *anoy*, *anoi* ... from the Lat. phrase *in odio habere*" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*); see note on iii. 2. 16, above: **without profit**, making no return for the sustenance they derive from the soil.

40. **in the compass of a pale**, in the small compass of an enclosure like this garden; a 'pale' is a stake for enclosing land, then the land so enclosed.

42. **Showing** ... **estate**, exhibiting, as in a miniature, the well-governed estate of our garden; the garden being in point of size a miniature of the kingdom, but well-ordered while the kingdom was in a state of anarchy. For **model**, cp. *H. V.*, ii. *Chor.* 16.

43. **sea-walled garden**, *i.e.* England; cp. above, ii. 1. 47.

45. **all**, wholly; **ruin'd**, broken down.

46. **knots**, beds of flowers laid out in intricate devices; cp. *L. L. L.* i. 1. 249, "from the west corner of thy curious-*knotted* garden." Steevens compares *Par. Lost*, iv. 242, "Flowers worthy Paradise, which not nice art In beds and curious *knots*, but nature boon Pour'd forth."

47. **caterpillars**, cp. above, ii. 3. 166, "The *caterpillars* of the commonwealth."

48, 9. **He that** ... **leaf**: he, to whose want of proper care and wholesome checks it is due that this spring has been over-luxuriant, has now himself prematurely come to the autumn of his days, *i.e.* he has to thank his own want of wholesome rigour that his power is now passing from his hands. The expressive

phrase "the fall," or "the fall of the year," is still in use in America.

50, 1. **The weeds** ... **up**, those noxious parasites that were sheltered from harm by the patronage of his power, and which, while seeming to support him, were in reality preying upon his life.

52. **Are pluck'd** ... **all**, have been completely extirpated; **root and all**, not merely the growth above the soil, but also the very roots.

55. **wasteful**, extravagant, lavish of his resources: **what pity**, for the omission of the indefinite article, see Abb. § 86.

56. **dress'd**, put in order; Malone quotes *Genesis*, ii. 15. "and put him into the *garden* of Eden, to *dress* it and keep it"; **dress** is ultimately from the Lat. *directus*, straight.

57. **at time of year**, at the proper season.

58. **wound**, incise.

59. **in sap and blood**, in the matter of sap and life-juice; the words are equivalent to 'sap which is the blood of trees.'

60. **it**, the tree; **confound**, ruin, destroy.

61. **growing**, *sc.* into power.

62, 3. **They might** ... **duty**, they might have lived to show the wholesome outcome of loyal allegiance, and he to enjoy its benefit.

64. **bearing boughs**, boughs that may be trusted to produce fruit.

66. **Which waste**, which hours wasted in idleness; **idle**, proleptic, made idle by the waste.

67. **shall**, will certainly.

68. **Depress'd**, beaten down.

69. **'Tis doubt he will be**, it is to be apprehended that he will be; cp. iii. *H. VI.* iv. 8. 37, "*The doubt is* that he will seduce the rest."

71. **black**, most gloomy.

72. **press'd to death**, an allusion to the punishment of death, inflicted upon those who when arraigned refused to plead, by means of heavy weights placed upon their stomach; cp. *M. A.* iii. 1. 76, "O, she would laugh me Out of myself, *press me to death* with wit": **through want of speaking** is used in a double sense (1) from a desire to speak, (2) in consequence of not speaking.

73. **old Adam's likeness**, Adam being the first gardener; "the grand old gardener," as Tennyson calls him in the earlier editions of *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, l. 51; cp. ii. *H. VI.* iv. 2. 142, "And Adam was a *gardener*." **set**, appointed.

75, 6. **hath suggested** ... **man?** has tempted you to cause a second fall of man in announcing the deposition of the king? The serpent tempted Eve to eat of the forbidden fruit, and Eve in her turn tempted Adam, who in consequence was driven out of the garden of Eden; 'suggest' = tempt, is very frequent in Shakespeare.

78. **thou little** ... **earth**, you who are little better than the earth you till, a mere clod; cp. *M. A.* ii. 1. 63-6, "Would it not grieve a woman to be overmastered with a piece of valiant dust? to make an account of her life to a *clod* of wayward marl?" For the separation between two parts of the adjectival phrase, see Abb. § 419*a*.

79. **Divine**, predict.

80. **Camest thou by**, did you obtain; cp. *J. C.* ii. 1. 169, "O, that we then could *come by* Cæsar's spirit"; but the phrase is a very frequent one: for **tidings**, see note on ii. 1. 272.

82. **To breathe**, in speaking; the infinitive used indefinitely.

83. **hold**, grasp; **he**, for the insertion of the pronoun after a proper name, see Abb. § 243.

84. **are weigh'd**, have been put into the balance.

86. **And some** ... **light**, some few frivolities the only result of which, instead of making him heavier, is to make him lighter; cp. *M. V.* iii. 2. 90, 1, "Which therein works a miracle in nature, Making them *lightest* that wear most of it": **some few**, though used to minimize, in reality means a great many.

89. **odds**, Shakespeare uses the word both as a singular and a plural, the former more often, and this seems to have been the more general practice with Elizabethan writers; *H. V.* iv. 3. 5, "*a* fearful *odds*"; *A. C.* iv. 15. 66, "The *odds is* gone"; **weighs down**, outweighs in the balance.

92. **Nimble mischance**, misfortune that is so quick in finding its way to a person; cp. *M. V.* i. 2. 21, 2, "such a hare is madness the youth, to skip o'er the meshes of good counsel the cripple."

93. **Doth not** ... **me**, ought you not to have made your embassy to me before all others?

95. **To serve me**, to pay your service to me.

98, 9. **What**, ... **Bolingbroke**? was I born to no happier fate than by my sad looks to add a grace to the, etc.; an allusion to the Roman custom by which the captives made in war were paraded in the triumphal entry of the conquerors; cp. *J. C.* i. 1. 38, 9, "What tributaries follow him to Rome To grace in captive bonds his chariot-wheels?"

101. **Pray**, I pray.

102, 3. **so that ... curse**, if in that way your misery might be lightened, I should be willing that the curse you invoke upon my skill should be fulfilled.

104. **fall**, let fall; cp. *Temp.* v. 1. 64, "Mine eyes ... *Fall* fellowly drops."

105. **I 'll set ... grace**, I will plant a row of rue, that sour plant that is called 'herb of grace'; cp. *Haml.* iv. 5. 181, "There 's *rue* for you; and here 's some for me: we may call it herb-grace o' Sundays." Etymologically there is no connection between 'rue,' the plant and 'rue,' or 'ruth,' sorrow; but the bitterness of the plant caused it to be connected in the popular mind with repentance, and so with grace, the result of repentance.

106. **even for ruth**, merely for sorrow's sake, out of the pity I feel for her.

Act IV. Scene I.

Stage Direction. *Westminster Hall.* "The rebuilding of Westminster Hall, which Richard had begun in 1397, being finished in 1399, the first meeting of Parliament in the new edifice was for the purpose of deposing him" (Malone).

3. **What thou dost know**, stating what you know.

4. **Who ... king**, who joined with the king in bringing it about.

5. **The bloody ... end**, the bloody deed which brought him to an untimely end; cp. *T. G.* iii. 1. 21, "A pack of sorrows which would press you down ... to your *timeless* grave."

6. **set before my face**, bring face to face with me.

9. **Scorns ... deliver'd**, is too proud to deny what it has once uttered.

10. **dead**, gloomy; Schmidt thinks the word may possibly mean 'dull,' 'inactive.'

11. **of length**, far-reaching.

12. **restful**, peaceful; as contrasted with the scene of the murder.

16. **crowns**, a 'crown' is a five shilling piece.

17. **Than Bolingbroke's return**, than *endure* Bolingbroke's, etc. For the ellipsis, see Abb. § 390. **England**, a trisyllable here, as "Ireland," in ii. 4. 103, above.

18. **withal**, moreover.

19. **In this ... death**, if this cousin of yours were to die.

21. **my fair stars**, the propitious stars which presided over my

birth. The belief in astrology was strongly held in Shakespeare's day, and his allusions to it are numerous ; cp. *Lear*, i. 2. 128-45.

22. **On equal terms**, as to meet him on terms of equality in order to chastise him.

24. **With the** ... **lips**, by the accusation which his slanderous lips have brought against me ; **attainder**, "formerly, when sentence of death was pronounced, the criminal was said to be attainted, *attinctus*, stained, or blackened . The consequences of attainder were forfeiture and corruption of blood" ... (Heard, *Shakespeare as a Lawyer*, p. 35).

25. **gage**, see i. 1. 69 : **the manual seal of death**, which is a seal that my hand affixes to the warrant for thy death.

26. **marks thee out**, designates as being doomed to hell.

28. **In thy heart-blood**, by the shedding of your heart's blood : **though being**, in spite of its being : **all**, wholly.

29. **the temper** ... **sword**, my well-tempered sword ; cp. *Oth.* v. 2. 253, "I have another weapon in this chamber ; It is a sword of Spain, the ice-brook's *temper*." "The harder the steel the brighter polish would it take, hence the polish may be taken as a measure of its temper" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

30. **it**, the gage thrown down by Aumerle.

31. **one**, *i.e.* the king.

31, 2. **I would** ... **so**, I wish that he who has provoked me were the noblest of all here present.

33. **If that** ... **sympathy**, if your valour will not consent to fight with any but those who are your equals in rank ; for **sympathy** = correspondence, cp. *Oth.* ii. 1. 232, "*sympathy* in years, manners, and beauties." For **that**, as a conjunctional affix, see Abb. § 287.

36. **and vauntingly** ... **it**, not only did you say so, but you said so in the most boastful terms.

39, 40. **And I** . . **point**, and I with the point of my sword will force back that falsehood into your heart, where it was fabricated ; **rapier**, Johnson points out that the rapier was not in use in England till two centuries after this time.

42. **I would** ... **hour**, I wish that the combat could take place now.

45. **In this appeal**, in thus challenging you ; see i. 1. 4 : **all**, wholly : **unjust**, false.

46. **And that thou art so**, and in confirmation of your being so.

47, 48. **To prove** ... **breathing**, pledging myself to substantiate my words by combat to the death.

49. **An if**, see Abb. § 103.

50. **And never ... steel**, and never again brandish my sword over the helmet of my foe in vengeance of the dishonour done me.

52. **I task ... like**, I set the earth the same task, *i.e.* that of bearing my gage flung down upon it.

53. **lies**, *i.e.* charges of lying.

55. **From sun to sun**, from sunrise to sunset; cp. *Cymb.* iii. 2. 70, "One score *'twixt sun and sun*," and iii. 4. 44, "To weep *'twixt clock and clock.*"

56. **Engage it to the trial**, bind yourself to the combat by taking it up, and throwing your own gage down.

57. **Who sets ... all**: who else desires to make a match with me? I will accept every challenge offered. The language is taken from gaming, where to 'set' was to stake a certain sum against another sum, the contest being decided by a cast of the dice; cp. *M. N. D.* iii. 1. 136, "for, indeed, who would *set* his wit to so foolish a bird? who would give a bird the lie, though he cry 'cuckoo' never so?"

62. **in presence**, present.

63. **witness with me**, join with me in bearing witness.

65. **boy.** "Fitzwater succeeded his father at the age of eighteen in 1386, and therefore at this time was thirty-one, and could hardly be called a 'boy'" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

67. **That it ... vengeance**, that it (my sword) shall execute upon you vengeance that shall atone for your slander; not only vengeance, but vengeance retaliatory of your slander.

70. **my honour's pawn**, the pledge that I will honourably meet you in combat.

71. **Engage ... trial**, see note on l. 56.

72. **fondly**, foolishly; cp. iii. 3. 185: **a forward horse**, one only too eager to run his course.

74. **in a wilderness**, *i.e.* in a place where no one could hinder the combat; cp. *Macb.* iii. 4. 104, "And dare me to the *desert* with thy sword."

77. **To tie ... correction**, by which I bind myself to administer to you the severest chastisement; **my**, subjective, my correction of you.

78, 9. **As I ... appeal**, by all the hopes I have of thriving in this new state of things upon which we are entering, I pledge myself, etc.

83, 4. **Some honest ... lies**; let some honest Christian lend me a gage which I may throw down in assertion that Norfolk lies. Holinshed, quoted by Steevens, says that "he threw down a hood that he had borrowed."

85. **If ... repeal'd**, if the king will allow him to be recalled from exile; for **repeal'd**, cp. above, ii. 2. 49: **to try his honour**, to vindicate his honour in combat with me.

86. **These differences ... gage**, these quarrels shall remain undecided, the challengers and challenged being bound by their gages to meet in combat when Norfolk is recalled.

89. **signories**, see note on iii. 1. 22.

90. **enforce his trial**, compel him to meet Aumerle in combat.

93. **Jesu**, "This form of the name 'Jesus' is used in the oblique cases, or with the optative mood, or in exclamation" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

94. **Streaming the ensign**, bearing the flag streaming in the wind; to 'stream' used as a transitive verb only here and in *J. C.* iii. 1. 201, "as fast as they (thy wounds) *stream* forth thy blood."

96. **toil'd ... war**, worn out by warlike exploits: **retired himself**, retired; for the reflexive use of verbs which are now intransitive, see Abb. § 296.

97-9. **And there ... Christ.** Malone points out that this is not historically true, Norfolk's death not occurring till after that of Richard.

100. **Under whose ... long**, whose soldier he had so long been.

104. **Of good old Abraham**, cp. *R. III.* iv. 3. 38, "The sons of Edward sleep in *Abraham's bosom*"; a reference to *Luke*, xvi. 22, "And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into *Abraham's bosom*."

106. **Till we ... trial**, till we fix the day on which the combats shall take place.

108. **plume-pluck'd**, stripped of his plumes; brought low.

111. **descending now from him**, which now falls from him; for the sake of the antithesis with **ascend**.

112. **Henry**, pronounced here as a trisyllable.

114. **Marry**, a corruption of Mary, the mother of Christ, used as a petty oath.

115, 6. **Worst ... truth**, least worthy may I be to speak in this royal presence, yet upon me (*sc.* as a priest) more than any it is incumbent to speak the truth; **beseeming**, it is beseeming, it beseems.

117. **Would God that**, *i.e.* it would be well if God should will that, etc.

119. **noblesse**, nobility of nature.

120. **Learn**, teach; as frequently in Shakespeare.

121. **What subject**, etc., *i.e.* no subject can, etc.

123. **are not judged**, have not sentence passed upon them: **but they ... hear**, without their being present to hear the charges brought against them.

124. **apparent**, manifest; cp. **i. 1. 13.**

125. **figure**, representative.

127. **planted**, installed; cp. *R. III.* iii. 7. 216, "But we will *plant* some other in the throne."

128. **subject**, an adjective, cp. *K. J.* iv. 2. 171, "no *subject* enemies," *i.e.* no enemies among my subjects.

129. **And**, and that too; for this emphatic use of *and*, see Abb. § 95: **forfend**, forbid; "an extraordinary compound, due to E. *for-* and *fend*, a familiar abbreviation of *defend*, just as *fence* (still in use) is a familiar abbreviation of *defence*"... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

130. **refined**, "freed from guilt and redeemed by Christ" (Schmidt).

131. **heinous**, hateful; F. *haine*, hate: **obscene**, foul.

133. **for**, in behalf of.

139. **go sleep**, go to sleep, *i.e.* to dwell quietly with; for the omission of 'to,' see Abb. § 349.

140. **seat of peace**, where peace usually dwells.

141. **Shall kin .. confound.** "Wars in which fellow-countrymen and kinsmen shall be ranged on opposite sides, will destroy all the obligations of family affection and of humanity. 'Kin' refers to blood relationship, 'kind' to our common human nature. Cp. *Haml.* i. 2. 65: "A little more than kin, and less than kind" (Cl. Pr. Edd.).

144. **Golgotha**, see *Matthew*, xxvii. 33, "And when they were come to a place called *Golgotha*, that is to say, *a place of* a skull," etc., and cp. *Macb.* i. 2. 40, "Except they meant to bathe in reeking wounds And memorize another *Golgotha.*"

145. **raise**, stir up: **this house**, this family, *i.e.* of Englishmen.

146. **division**, dissension, disunion; cp. i. *H. IV.* iv. 1. 62, "The quality and hair of our attempt Brooks no *division.*"

147. **cursed earth**, earth cursed by these conflicts.

148. **Prevent**, the old copies read **prevent** *it*; I have followed Pope and Dyce in omitting the pronoun.

149. **child**, those yet in their childhood.

150. **for your pains**, in return for the trouble you have taken.

151. **Of capital treason**, on the charge of being guilty of capital treason.

152. **be it your charge**, take it as a charge imposed upon you; see note on Carlisle, iii. 2, stage direction.

153. **his day of trial,** the day on which he shall be put on his trial to answer the charge of capital treason.

155. **in common view,** in the sight of all men.

157. **Without suspicion,** without being suspected of unfair dealing: **conduct,** conductor, escort; cp. *R. III.* i. 1. 45, "hath appointed This *conduct* to convey me to the Tower."

159. **Procure ... answer,** find persons to be bail for your appearance at the time when you shall be called upon to meet the charges brought against you.

160. **beholding,** the active participle, originated in a mistake for 'beholden,' the passive participle, in the sense of under an obligation, a sense which is not found in other parts of the verb, though a natural one of *be-hold.* For the participle in *-ing* used as an equivalent to *-en,* see Abb. § 372.

161. **And little ... hands,** and little help did we expect from you.

STAGE DIRECTION. *The regalia,* the insignia of a king, his crown, sceptre, ball, etc.

163, 4. **Before ... reign'd,** before I have had time to get rid of those kingly thoughts which occupied my mind while I was yet a king; for **shook,** see Abb. § 343.

166, 7. **Give sorrow ... submission,** allow sorrow for a time to school me to this submissive bearing which I must in future show; **Yet,** still.

168. **favours,** features, appearance; "'in beauty,' says Bacon in his 43rd Essay, 'that of favour is more than that of colour; and that of decent and gracious motion more than that of favour.' The word is now lost to us in that sense; but we still use *favoured* with *well, ill,* and perhaps other qualifying terms, for featured, or looking"...(Craik, *Eng. of Shakespeare,* § 54).

169. **sometime,** formerly; see note on i. 2. 54.

170. **So Judas did to Christ,** a reference to the words of Judas as he betrayed Christ; *Matthew,* xxvi. 49, "And forthwith he came to Jesus, and said, *Hail,* master; and kissed him": **in twelve,** among his twelve disciples.

173. **Am I ... clerk,** it was the duty of the clerk to say 'amen,' *i.e.* so be it, at the end of each prayer read by the priest.

174. **although ... he,** although in uttering that prayer I am praying for Bolingbroke, not for myself.

175. **And yet ... me.** And yet I will say 'amen' if in the sight of heaven I am still king.

177. **of thine own good will,** of your own accord.

178. **Which tired ... offer,** which, when weary of being king, you lately offered to do.

181. **seize**, take hold of.

185. **owes**, owns; as frequently in Elizabethan English, the final *-n*, being dropped: **filling one another**, which fill one another, the full bucket when raised causing the empty one to descend and fill itself.

188. **That bucket down**, that bucket which is down.

193. **still am I king of those**, cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 371, 2, "*King'd* of our fears, until our fears resolved, Be by some certain king purged and deposed."

195. **Your cares ... down**, the fact of your cares being set up, does not, etc.

196. **My care ... done**; that which troubles me now is the absence of care, due to my former anxieties (*i.e.* those I had as a king) having ceased.

197. **Your care ... won**: that which troubles you is the presence of anxieties, due to the pains you have taken to acquire them.

198. **The cares ... away**: though I have given away to you my cares as king, yet I still retain them (in the thought of what belongs to me as king).

199. **They tend ... stay**, they go with, are attendant upon, the possessor of the crown, and yet they stay with me in the recollection of my former state.

201. **Ay, no; ... be**; having first said 'Ay' (yes), 'no,' he goes on to pun upon the sound of 'ay' (I), and says, I must not say 'ay,' *i.e.* I, for I must be nothing.

202. **Therefore ... thee**, therefore I must not utter the word 'no,' for I resign to you, and, so doing, forfeit the right to use words of denial.

203. **undo myself**, unking myself, strip myself of all that belongs to me as king.

207. **balm**, see note on iii. 2. 55.

209. **With mine ... state**, by my own words abdicate that sanctity, divine right, which belonged to me as king.

210. **all duty's rites**, all ceremonious marks of respect due to me as king.

212. **manors**, estates belonging to me as a lord; "properly 'a place to dwell in'; from O.F. *manoir*, *maneir*, to dwell...—Lat. *manere*, to dwell, remain" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*); **revenues** with the accent on the second syllable: **forgo**, see note on i. 3. 160.

213. **deny**, cancel, abrogate.

214. **broke**, for other instances of the curtailed form of the past participle, see Abb. § 343.

215. **that swear to thee**, of those that take an oath of allegiance to you.

216. **Make**, may God make.

217. **And thou**, for the nominative pronoun where we should expect to find an oblique case, see Abb. § 216 : **achieved**, see note on ii. 1. 254.

219. **soon lie Richard**, *may* Richard, etc.

221. **sunshine days**, days of sunshine ; bright, prosperous, days.

225. **Against ... land** ; against the condition and improvement of, etc., a hendiadys for 'against all improvement of your country's condition.'

226. **by confessing them**, by your confessing them.

227. **worthily**, justly, upon sufficient cause.

228. **ravel out**, disentangle, *i.e.* show the whole web ; cp. *Haml.* iii. 4. 186, "Make you to *ravel* all this matter *out*" ; and *A. W.* iv. 3. 84, 5, "The web of our life is of a mingled yarn, good and ill together."

230. **upon record**, recorded in a document ; **record**, with the accent on the second syllable.

231. **in so fair a troop**, before such a noble audience.

232. **a lecture of them**, a lesson contained in them for the instruction of others : **If thou wouldst**, if you were to read, etc.

233. **heinous**, see note on l. 131 : **article**, item, particular.

234. **Containing**, comprising, having among its contents.

235. **And cracking**, and concerning the breaking of, etc.

236. **Mark'd with**, etc., refers to "heinous article."

237. **look upon**, behold ; **upon**, an adverb, as in iii. *H. VI.* ii. 3. 27, "And *look upon*, as if the tragedy Were play'd in jest."

238. **Whilst that ... myself**, while I in my wretchedness harass myself with taunts and gibes ; cp. *T. N.* iii. 1. 130, "Have you not set mine honour at the stake And *baited* it with all the unmuzzled thoughts That tyrannous heart can think" ; a metaphor from bear-baiting.

239. **with Pilate**, like Pilate ; see *Matthew*, xxvii. 24, "When Pilate saw that he could prevail nothing, but that rather a tumult was made, he took water, and washed his hands before the multitude, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this just person."

240. **outward**, not really felt : **you Pilates**, you who have acted towards me as Pilate did towards Christ in delivering Him to be crucified.

241. **my sour cross**, my bitter affliction ; the 'cross,' the

symbol of the Christian religion, being used as an emblem of human suffering.

242. **And water ... sin**, cp. *Psalms*, li. 2, "Wash me throughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin."

243. **dispatch**, make haste.

246. **But they can see**, as to prevent their seeing: **a sort**, a pack, set; cp. ii. *H. VI.* ii. 1. 167, "A *sort* of naughty persons."

250. **To undeck ... king**; to strip the body of a king of those marks of greatness that are properly his; **pompous**, magnificent; not used in the modern sense of affected dignity.

251. **Made glory base**, humbled that which is in itself glorious.

252. **state**, dignity.

254. **haught**, haughty; cp. *R. III.* ii. 3. 28, "And the queen's sons and brothers *haught* and proud": **insulting**, who triumph over my woes; cp. *A. Y. L.* iii. 5. 36, "That you *insult*, exult, and all at once, Over the wretched?"

255. **Nor no man's**, the emphatic double negative.

256, 7. **No, not ... usurp'd.** Even that name which was given me in baptism is taken away from me; in ceasing to be king, I cease to be Richard; **was given**, which was given.

258. **winters**, and of course summers, but Richard in his present mood thinks only of what is gloomy.

260. **mockery king of snow**, counterfeit king made only of snow.

263. **not greatly good**, not showing your goodness in any noble way.

264. **An if my word ... England**, if my command is still current, is accepted as something of standard value; **sterling** is said to be a contraction of 'Easterling,' the Easterlings or North Germans being the first 'moneyers' in England: for **An if**, see Abb. § 103.

265. **command ... straight**, command that a mirror be immediately brought.

267. **his**, its.

269. **while, till**; cp. i. 3. 122.

270. **ere I come to hell**, before my time to suffer torment comes.

271. **Urge**, press, insist upon.

273. **shall be satisfied**, with an emphasis on **shall**.

275. **writ**, the usual form in Shakespeare; Steevens points out that the phrase is from *Psalms*, cxxxix. 15, "and in thy book were all my members written": **and that 's myself**, and by "the very book," I mean myself.

279. **And make no**, etc., without making any, etc.

280. **Like to** .. **prosperity**, in that resembling those who were ready to follow me when in prosperity.

281. **beguile**, mislead.

282. **his**, of him ; see Abb. § 218.

284. **wink**, blink, as being unable to look upon such splendour.

285. **faced**, countenanced, lent approval to.

286. **out-faced**, looked down, put out of countenance ; cp. ii. *H. VI.* iv. 10. 49, "See if thou canst *outface* me with thy looks."

291. **my face**, *i.e.* as reflected in the mirror.

292. **The shadow** ... **sorrow**, the unsubstantial image of sorrow in your mind ; your unreal sorrow ; cp. above, ii. 2. 14, "Each substance of a grief hath twenty shadows."

293. **The shadow** ... **face**, the reflected image of your face ; cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 498, "The *shadow* of myself form'd in her eye."

296. **external** ... **laments**, outward demonstrations of grief consisting of lamentations ; cp. *Haml.* i. 2. 86, "These but the trappings and the suits of woe."

299. **There**, *sc.* in my soul : **the substance**, the reality.

300. **For thy** ... **that**, for the bounty of you who, etc. : for **thy** as an antecedent of a relative, see Abb. § 218.

308. **to my flatterer**, for my flatterer.

317. **good**, well said : **conveyers**, cheats, thieves ; to 'convey' was a cant term for to steal ; cp. *M. W.* i. 3. 32, "*Nym.* The good humour is to steal at a minute's rest. *Pist.* '*Convey*,' the wise it call. 'Steal'! foh ! a fico for the phrase."

318. **That rise** ... **fall**, who, like thieves, are so clever in profiting by another's loss.

319. **set down**, fix, appoint.

321. **pageant**, an allusion to the pageants or shows by which kings were entertained on festive occasions.

322, 3. **The woe's** ... **thorn**. Delius points out that this is a prophetic hint of the wars of the Roses.

325. **To rid** ... **blot ?** by which we may free the realm of this stain upon its honour, viz., Bolingbroke.

328, 9. **take** ... **intents**, bind yourselves by taking the holy sacrament not to divulge the intentions I may reveal to you.

334. **shall show**, *which* shall show.

ACT V. SCENE I.

2. **To Julius ... tower**, according to tradition, the Tower of London was built by Julius Cæsar; cp. *R. III.* iii. 1. 69-71, "*Prince.* Did Julius Cæsar build that place, my lord? *Buck.* He did, my gracious lord, begin that place: Which, since, succeeding ages have re-edified." **ill-erected**, not 'badly built,' but 'built to be used for evil' purposes, especially the confinement and execution of state prisoners.

3. **flint bosom**, stony-hearted bosom.

6. **Have**, subjunctive; *sc.* which does not seem probable.

7. **soft**, wait.

9. **in pity**, from pity.

11. **Ah, thou ... stand**, Ah, you, now only the bare outline of what old Troy once was, the mere skeleton of your former glory; probably with an allusion to the former name of London, Trinovantum, *i.e.* new Troy. Somewhat similar is the imagery in Tennyson's *Vision of Sin*, iv. 125-8, "Lo, God's likeness—the ground-plan—Neither modell'd, glazed, or framed: Buss me, thou rough sketch of man, Far too naked to be shamed;" though there it is a literal skeleton that is addressed.

12. **map of honour**, image or picture of honoured greatness, but only the picture, not the reality. Elsewhere in Shakespeare 'map,' when used in a figurative sense, generally means a real representation, impersonation, *e.g.* ii. *H. VI.* iii. 1. 203, "in thy face I see The *map of honour*"; *T. A.* iii. 2. 12, "Thou *map of woe*, that thou dost talk in signs," said to Lavinia whose tongue has been cut out.

13. **beauteous inn**, stately dwelling-place; probably here not a tavern, though to this sense allusion is made in l. 15, "an ale-house guest."

14. **hard-favour'd**, harsh-featured; see note on iv. 1. 168.

15. **When ... guest?** when every common ale-house is full of rejoicing.

16, 7. **Join not ... end**; do not, by your passionate regrets, help the grief which already rives my heart, to end my life too suddenly.

19, 20. **From which ... this**, from which being awakened, we find that the reality is but this: **sworn brother**, "an expression originally derived from the *fraters jurati*, who in the days of chivalry mutually bound themselves by oath to share each other's fortune" (Dyce, *Gloss.*); cp. *H. V.* ii. 1. 13, "we'll be all three *sworn brothers* to France"; also *M. A.* i. 1. 73, and i. *H. IV.* ii. 4. 7.

21. **Necessity**, distress, want of everything that makes life worth living.

22. **Will keep a league**, will maintain a peaceful union.

23. **cloister thee**, shut yourself up: 'cloister,' from O. F. *cloistre*, Lat. *claustrum*, a cloister, literally an enclosure: **religious house**, convent, house devoted to a life of religious seclusion from the world.

24. **Our holy lives**, we by spending our time in pious thoughts and deeds: **a new world's crown**, a crown of happiness in a new world, *sc.* heaven.

25. **Which ... down**, we by our irreligious lives having lost our earthly crown: **stricken**, Shakespeare uses 'struck,' 'strucken,' 'stroken,' 'stricken,' etc., as forms of the participle.

26. **in shape and mind**, not only in outward appearance, a change due to 'wasting sorrow,' but also in mind.

28. **hath he been in thy heart**, has he found his way to your heart, and paralyzed that?

31. **To be o'erpower'd**, at being overpowered; the infinitive used indefinitely: **pupil-like**, as a docile pupil.

32. **Take**, accept.

34. **which art**, you who are.

35. **if aught but beasts**, if my subjects had been anything more noble than mere beasts.

37. **Good sometime queen**, good queen as you once were: **prepare thee hence**, prepare to set out hence for France; the verb of motion omitted, as frequently.

39. **thy last living leave**, the last farewell that will be possible to you in life.

42. **Of woeful ... betid**, of troublous times now long since past; "'betide' from M. E. prefix *bi-* or *be-*, and M. E. *tiden*, to happen ... from A.S. *tidan*, to happen.—A.S. *tid*, a tide, time, hour" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

43. **to quit their griefs**, to requite the sad stories they have told; to 'quit,' in this sense, is very frequent in Shakespeare.

44. **tale of me**, my story; on the pronoun for pronominal adjective, and the introduction of 'of' in the case of an objective genitive, see Abb. § 225.

45. **And send**, and *thus* send.

46. **For why**, for indeed; see Abb. § 75: **the senseless brands**, *even* the burning logs of wood which have no feeling: **will sympathize**, will show sympathy for your sorrows by exuding moisture which will put the fire out; cp. *Temp.* iii. 1. 19, "Pray set it down (his burden of logs) and rest you; when it burns,

'Twill weep for having wearied you." For this transitive use of **sympathize**, cp. *C. E.* v. 1. 397, "That by this *sympathized* one day's error Have suffer'd wrong."

47. **moving tongue**, which melts to tears those who listen to it.

48. **fire**, a dissyllable.

49. **And some**, *i.e.* of the brands; **some coal-black**, some by becoming coal-black in colour: **ashes**, an allusion to the practice of strewing ashes on the head as a sign of repentance or great grief; **coal-black**, to the wearing of black garments. Delius compares *K. J.* iv. 1. 110, 1, "The breath of heaven hath blown his spirit out, And strew'd repentant ashes on his head."

53. **there is ... you**, measures have been taken, arrangements made; cp. *Oth.* v. 2. 72, "No, his mouth is stopp'd; Honest Iago hath *ta'en order* for 't"; *R. III.* iv. 2. 53, "I will *take order* for her keeping close."

54. **all swift speed**, all the speed that can possibly be made.

55, 6. **thou ladder ... throne**, you who have helped Bolingbroke to mount my throne.

58. **gathering head**, becoming ripe; the figure is from a boil growing to a head; cp. *Temp.* v. 1. 1, "Now does my project *gather to a head*"; *Ham.* iv. 4. 27, "This is the imposthume of much wealth and peace, That inward breaks." See ii. *H. IV.* iii. 1. 57-79, where Henry the Fourth (Bolingbroke) refers to the fulfilment of Richard's prophecy.

59. **Shall ... corruption**, shall burst forth in a putrid discharge, *i.e.* shall show itself in an outburst of treasonable violence.

61. **helping him to all**, seeing that you helped him to all.

62. **which know'st**, since you know.

63. **To plant**, as a tree; cp. above, iv. 1. 127: **again**, on the other hand.

64. **Being ... urg'd**, on the smallest provocation; **ne'er**, for an explanation of 'never' where we should use 'ever,' see Abb. § 52. Here there is a confusion between 'though you were so little urged that you had never before been urged so little,' and 'though you may never have been so little urged as in this supposed case.'

65. **To pluck him headlong**, to root him up and cast him headlong; **headlong**. "There were some adverbs in O. E., originally dative feminine singular, ending in *-inga*, *-unga*, *-linga*, *-lunga*. A few of these, without the dative suffix, exist under the form *-ling* or *-long*, as *head-long* (O. E. *heedlinge*), *sideling*, *sidelong*, *darkling* (*darklong*), *flatling* and *flatlong*" (Morris, *Hist. Outl.* etc., § 311).

66. **converts**, turns; for this intransitive sense, cp. *M. A.* i.

l. 123, "Courtesy itself must *convert* to disdain, if you come in her presence."

67. **one or both**, *sc.* of these "wicked friends."

68. **worthy danger**, danger well merited.

69. **and there an end**, and that's enough of the subject; cp. *Macb.* iii. 3. 80; *Cymb.* iii. 1. 84.

74. **unkiss the oath**, cancel by a kiss, as by a kiss it was ratified; for the custom of giving a kiss at marriage, cp. *T. S.* iii. 2. 180, 1.

76. **I towards the north**, I going towards, etc. Properly, we should have had 'me,' *i.e.* sending me.

77. **pines the clime**, afflicts the climate; **cold and sickness** is to be taken as a single thought; to 'pine' in this transitive sense is not found elsewhere in Shakespeare, though in *V. A.* 602 we have it with a cognate accusative, "poor birds Do surfeit by the eye and *pine* the maw"; **clime**, or climate, (1) a belt of the earth's surface contained between two given parallels of latitude, (2) a region considered with reference to its atmospheric conditions, (3) condition of a region or country in relation to such conditions, especially as they affect human, animal, or vegetable life.

78. **set forth in pomp**, sent on her journey with all pomp and magnificence.

80. **Hallowmas**, "the feast of *All Hallows* or All Saints ... a familiar abbreviation for *All Hallows' Mass* = the mass (or feast) of All Saints ... here *hallows'* is the genitive plural of M. E. *halowe*, or *halwe*, a saint" (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*); the feast of All Saints is the 1st November, the beginning of winter; the **short'st of day**, the shortest of days, the 21st of December, midwinter.

84. **That were ... policy**. To do that would be for Bolingbroke to show some love towards you, but little good policy as regards himself; since then Richard would have facilities for plotting against him, which he would not have if kept in England.

86. **So two, ... woe**, so that two, by weeping together, might make one woe.

88. **Better ... near**, it is better that we should be far from each other than, being near in place, be no nearer meeting; for **near**, = nearer, cp. above, iii. 2. 64; and for **the**, the ablative of the demonstrative, see Abb. § 94.

89. **count ... sighs**, measure the distance you go by the number of sighs you breathe.

90. **So longest ... moans**, in that way the one who goes farthest (*sc.* I) will have to make the most moans. For the omission of 'the' before **longest way**, see Abb. § 82.

91. **Twice ... groan**, twice for every step I take, I will groan (and so make the number of my groans equal to yours).

92. **piece the way out**, lengthen it ; cp. *Lear*, iii. 6. 2, "I will *piece out* the comfort with what addition I can."

93. **wooing**, courting.

94. **Since, wedding it**, since in the wedding of it, *i.e.* when we come to take it for the rest of our lives, as husbands and wives take each other in marriage.

95. **and dumbly part**, and then let us separate without more words.

96. **mine**, my heart.

97. **'twere no good part**, it would be no real kindness.

98. **To take ... heart**, to take upon myself the keeping of your heart, for, by so doing, I should be certain to kill it with grief.

99. **now I have ... again**, now that you have given me back my own heart.

101. **We make ... delay**, we make woe proud by this loving lingering; cp. iii. 3. 163, "Or shall we play the *wantons* with our woes?"

102. **the rest ... say**, let the rest be expressed by the sorrow we feel; cp. *M. V.* ii. 3. 10, "tears exhibit my tongue."

SCENE II.

2. **When weeping ... off**, when for tears you could not finish your story ; the line is parenthetical.

3. **our two cousins**, Richard and Bolingbroke.

4. **leave**, leave off.

4-6. **At that ... head**, at the point where I was telling you about the rude, lawless hands throwing dust, etc.

7. **as I said**, as I was saying.

9. **Which his ... know**, which seemed to be conscious of the ambitious character of its rider.

12-7. **you would ... Bolingbroke**, you would have thought that the windows crowded with people, and the walls covered with tapestry, were speaking, so loud were the shouts of welcome.

14. **casements**, windows; properly the frame forming a window, or part of a window, which opened on hinges attached to the upright side of the frame in which it was fixed ; cp. *M. N. D.* iii. 1. 57, "Why, then may you have a *casement* of the great chamber window, where we play, open" : **their desiring eyes**, their eyes so anxious to behold him.

17. **Jesu**, see note on iv. 1. 93.

19. **Bespake**, addressed ; the other meaning (the only one now in use) is to order or engage for some future time.

21. **still**, continually.

22. **the whilst**, during this time ; 'whilst' is really 'whiles,' the genitive of 'while,' = time, with an excrescent *-t*, after *s*, as in *amongs-t*, *amids-t*.

24. **well-graced**, popular, in favour with the audience, and also well-skilled in his art.

25. **idly**, inattentively.

26. **Thinking ... tedious**, thinking that all he utters is but wearisome and idle talk.

31. **such gentle sorrow**, such meek signs of sorrow.

32. **His face ... smiles**, smiles and tears all the while striving for mastery in his face.

33. **badges**, marks ; cp. *M. A.* i. 1. 23, "Even so much that joy could not show itself modest enough without a *badge* of bitterness," *i.e.* tears : **patience**, patient endurance ; a trisyllable.

34. **for some strong purpose**, for some great purpose of His own, which is hidden from us.

35. **perforce**, of necessity.

36. **barbarism itself**, the most savage cruelty.

38. **To whose ... contents**, whose high will sets a limit to our desires, and must be calmly acquiesced in. For **bound**, cp. *K. J.* ii. 1. 442, "O, two such silver currents, when they join, Do glorify the banks that *bound* them *in*."

40. **Whose state ... allow**, whose majesty and claim to honour I for ever recognize ; **allow**, from "F. *allouer* ... to let out to hire, to appoint or set down a proportion for expence ... — Low Lat. *allocare*, to admit a thing as proved" ... (Skeat, *Ety. Dict.*).

41. **Aumerle that was**, he who was once Aumerle, but is so no longer. Steevens quotes Holinshed, "The Dukes of *Aumerle*, Surrey and Exeter, were, by an act of Henry's first parliament, deprived of their dukedoms, but were allowed to retain their earldoms of *Rutland*, Kent, and Huntingdon."

42. **But that is lost**, but that title is forfeited.

44. **I am ... truth**, I in parliament have become surety for his sincerity.

45. **fealty**, fidelity ; which words are doublets.

46, 7. **who are ... spring**? who are they that now adorn this new-made court of the king as violets adorn the green lap of earth in early spring?

48. **nor I ... not**, the double negative emphasizing the assertion.

49. **lief**, gladly; literally an adjective = dear, beloved.

50. **bear you well**, conduct yourself with prudence.

52. **hold ... triumphs**? do those tournaments and public shows hold good? *i.e.* are they to come off; **justs**, or jousts, from the verb to 'joust' or 'just.' to tilt, or encounter on horseback, the original sense being merely to meet or approach, then to meet or approach in a hostile sense.

53. **For aught I know**, for anything I know to the contrary.

56. **What seal ... bosom**? the seals to ancient documents were attached by slips of parchment, cp. *R.J.* iv. 1. 56; **without**, outside.

58. **No matter ... it**: then, if it is nothing, it does not matter who sees it; **see**, subjunctive.

59. **I will be satisfied**, I am determined to have my doubts satisfied.

62. **I would not have seen**, I would rather should not be seen.

63. **which for ... see**, and I for some reasons mean to see it.

64. **What should you fear**? what can you possibly fear.

66. **'gainst the triumph day**, in anticipation of, preparation for, the day when the revels are to be held.

67, 8. **Bound to himself ... bound to**? *i.e.* it is all nonsense talking of a bond for gay apparel; if he had executed such a bond, he would not be carrying it about his person, but would have made it over to the tradesman to whom he was bound.

70. **I may not**, I cannot; see Abb. § 310, for 'may' with a negative.

75. **God for his mercy**, see note on i. 2. 40.

79. **appeach**, impeach; "appeach represents an earlier *anpeche* ... Eng. or A. Fr. form of *enpeche-r.*—Lat. *impedicare*, to catch by the feet, entangle" ... (Murray. *Eng. Dict.*).

81. **I will not peace**, I will not hold my peace.

82. **be content**, do not worry yourself.

82, 3. **it is ... answer**, it is but something for which my life must pay the penalty.

85. **amazed**, confounded, bewildered; see note on i. 3. 81.

86. **villain**! to the servant who enters with the Duke's boots.

89. **thine own**, *i.e.* son.

90. **Have we more sons**? The Cl. Pr. Edd. point out that the Duke had at least one more son, Richard, who appears as Earl of Cambridge in the play of *Henry V.*

91. **Is not** ... **time**? has not the period during which I was capable of bearing children been exhausted by time, *i.e.* am I not past child-bearing?

92. **from mine age,** from me in my old age.

95. **fond,** foolish.

97. **here,** *i.e.* whose names are entered in this document.

98. **interchangeably** .. **hands,** in mutual compact have signed their names, pledging themselves, etc.

99. **He shall be none,** *i.e.* of those who will do this deed.

100. **then what** ... **him**? then it will matter nothing to him what they do.

102. **groan'd for him,** suffered the pains of child-birth in bearing him.

104. **Thy mind,** your meaning; what is in your mind.

110. **unruly,** ungovernable, refusing submission to your husband.

111. **After, Aumerle**! Follow him: **his horse,** one of his horses.

112. **Spur post,** spur your horse to its greatest speed; for **post,** here an adverb, see note on i. 1. 56.

115. **I doubt** ... **ride,** I feel sure of being able to ride.

Scene III.

1. **unthrifty,** reckless, wild: **son,** afterwards Henry the Fifth, who in reality was at this time only twelve years old.

3. **If any plague** ... **he,** the first allusion to that retribution the shadow of which was so constantly over Henry the Fourth and his son.

4. **I would to God,** "*to* in the phrase 'I would *to* God' may mean 'near,' 'in the sight of'; or there may be a meaning 'I should desire (even carrying my desire) *to* God' ... Possibly, however, this phrase may be nothing but a corruption of the more correct idiom, 'Would God that'" (Abb. § 190).

5. **at London,** we should now say '*in* London,' as when speaking of countries or very large places.

6. **For there** ... **frequent,** for such places are his constant resort; the verb is generally used transitively, and even here the word **there** is equivalent to 'those places.'

7. **unrestrained,** licentious, acknowledging no restraint; **companions,** here, as frequently in Shakespeare, used in a bad sense, as we now use 'fellows.'

9. **beat our watch**, belabour our watchmen; a pastime carried on to much later times, the watchmen, or constables, of former days being few in number and frequently old and incapable, as they are represented in *Much Ado about Nothing*: **passengers**, those who walk the streets; cp. ii. *H. VI.* iii. 1. 129, "Or foul felonious thief that fleeced poor *passengers*."

10. **Which**, as to which; Dyce and Staunton follow Pope in reading 'while'; **wanton**, probably here a substantive, as in *K. J.* v. 1. 70, "A cocker'd silken *wanton*"; *Cymb.* iv. 2. 8, "But not so citizen a *wanton*."

11. **Takes .. honour**, makes it a point of honour; considers himself bound in honour by the ties of comradeship.

13. **some two days since**, a day or two ago.

15. **the gallant**, ironically.

18. **wear it as a favour**, in tournaments it was customary for the combatants to wear a glove, sleeve, scarf, etc., given them by the lady of their love whose champion they represented themselves to be: **and with that**, and wearing that in his helmet.

20. **As ... desperate**, equally dissolute and reckless is he: **through both**, *i.e.* his dissoluteness and recklessness.

21. **some sparks ... hope**, some indications of more hopeful things: **elder years**, increasing years.

22. **May ... forth**, may bring to a happy birth; cp. *J. C.* v. 3. 70, "O error, soon conceived Thou never comest unto a happy birth."

24, 5. **What means ... wildly?** what is the reason of our cousin staring and looking so wildly?

27. **To have**, that I may be allowed to have.

32. **Unless a pardon**, *i.e.* be promised me.

34. **If on the first**, if the fault was of the former nature, *i.e.* one of intention only; see Abb. 181: **how heinous e'er**, however heinous.

35. **To win thy after-love**, in order to secure your love for the future.

36. **turn the key**, *sc.* to lock the door; but also, and more commonly, to unlock, *e.g. Macb.* ii. 3. 2.

41. **make thee safe**, put it out of your power to injure me by killing you; cp. *Temp.* iii. 1. 21, "He's *safe* for these three hours."

43. **secure**, over-confident; see note on ii. 1. 266.

44. **for love**, out of love: **treason**, in calling him "fool-hardy."

48. **arm us**, prepare ourself.

49. **Peruse**, examine, read over; properly to use thoroughly.

50. **that my ... show**, which owing to my haste (*i.e.* to my being out of breath from the haste I have made) prevents my showing ; see l. 47. For the omission of 'to' before the verb, see Abb. § 349.

51. **pass'd**, already pronounced ; cp. *H. V.* v. 2. 82.

53. **My heart ... hand**, though I signed the paper, my heart is not in conjunction with my handwriting ; cp. above, v. 2. 98, "And interchangeably set down their hands."

54. **ere thy hand ... down**, before your hand appended your signature.

57. **to pity him**, to show him the mercy promised.

61. **sheer**, clear ; the original meaning of the word. Steevens quotes *The Faery Queen*, iii. 2. 44, "Who having viewed in a fountain *sheer* Her face."

62, 3. **From whence ... himself** ! from which source is derived this stream that has chosen to flow through muddy channels, and of its own accord has polluted itself, *i.e.* your son, though sprung from a father of such unsullied honour, has preferred to associate with traitors, and thus, of his own doing, has contaminated himself.

64. **Thy overflow ... bad** ; the excess of virtue in you turns to evil in him ; for **converts**, see v. 1. 66.

65, 6. **And thy ... son.** And this same abundance of goodness in you shall serve to wipe out this deadly stain in your son who has deviated from the path of honour ; the metaphor from a stream is kept up in **abundant**, from Lat. *abundare*, to overflow. For **digressing**, cp. *R. J.* iii. 3. 127, "*Digressing* from the valour of a man."

67. **So shall ... bawd** ; in that way (if you allow my virtue to condone his vice) my virtue will but give facilities for his indulging in vice.

68. **And he ... shame**, and he by his shame shall dissipate the honour which I, by my actions, have laid up.

69. **their ... gold**, the gold which their fathers have scraped together, have acquired by such pains and self-denial.

70. **Mine honour ... dies**, my honour lives only in the death of his dishonour, *i.e.* until his dishonour is purged away, my honour has no true life.

71. **Or my ... lies**, or, I may say, I live disgraced in his dishonour.

72. **in his life**, in allowing him to live : **giving him breath**, by giving, etc. For the termination *-ing*, see Abb. § 372.

79. **a serious thing**, a tragic matter.

80. **'The Beggar and the King,'** a reference to the ballad of *King Cophetua and the Beggar Maid*, the story of which is alluded to in *L. L. L.* iv. 1. 66; ii. *H. IV.* v. 3. 106.

81. **dangerous**, *i.e.* in intention; said with some sarcasm.

83. **whosoever pray**, *i.e.* even if it be the mother of the criminal that prays.

84. **More sins ... may.** The result of this forgiveness will probably be that more sins will thrive, succeed in their objects.

85, 6. **This fester'd ... confound.** If this corrupted joint be cut away, the rest of the body will remain healthful; while this being left untouched will disease the rest of the body.

88. **Love ... can**, love which does not love its own flesh and blood cannot possibly love another; if he has no love for his own son, you may be sure that his profession of love for yourself is not to be trusted. Shakespeare probably had in his mind the passage in i. *John*, iv. 20, "If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar: for he that loveth not his brother whom he hath seen, how can he love God whom he hath not seen?"

89. **What dost ... here?** What do you do here? What business have you to be here?

90. **Shall ... rear?** Do you hope to give life again to a traitor?

91. **liege**, see note on i. 1. 129.

93. **walk upon my knees**, *i.e.* will never rise up, but move from place to place upon her knees, instead of her feet, until her son is pardoned.

94. **And never ... sees**, and never look upon the daylight that beholds those who are happy; *i.e.* live a life of seclusion, as in a convent.

97. **Unto**, in addition to, joining with her; cp. *A. Y. L.* i. 2. 250, "I should have given him tears *unto* entreaties." So 'to' very frequently.

98. **bended be**, are bent.

102. **from his mouth**, not from his heart; cp. *Macb.* v. 3. 27, "Curses, not loud but deep, *mouth-honour*, breath."

103. **would be denied**, is willing to be refused.

107. **false hypocrisy**, *sc.* in pretending to prefer your safety to his son's life; **false**, pleonastic.

109. **out-pray**, outweigh in their earnestness.

114. **An if**, see Abb. § 103. **thy tongue to teach**, with the duty imposed upon me of teaching you to speak.

116. **I never longed**, *i.e.* with such eagerness.

119. **pardonne moi**, excuse me; a polite way of refusing a

request. For the *e* sonant in *pardonne*, cp. *K. J.* v. 2. 104, "'*Vive le roi!*' when I have bank'd their towns." In one of Heywood's Epilogues we have, "But *Vive*, *vive* le Roy, *vive* la Royne," where the final *e* must be sonant twice at all events. Abbott (§ 489) gives other instances.

120. **teach pardon**, *i.e.* the word 'pardon' (in the French sense), to destroy pardon (in the English sense).

121. **sour**, sour-tempered, morose.

122. **That set'st ... word!** who oppose the word pardon (in English) against itself (in French).

123. **as 'tis current**, in the sense which it bears.

124. **chopping**, changing, *i.e.* the meaning which the word bears in English; cp. the phrase '*chopping* and changing,' and 'the wind *chops*,' *i.e.* veers round to another point. In its transitive sense the word is most common in the phrase to 'chop logic,' *i.e.* to exchange logical arguments and terms, to reason argumentatively.

125. **set thy tongue there**, *i.e.* in your eye, give it the same inclination that your eye has.

128. **to rehearse**, to recite: literally to repeat (*e.g.* a part, as actors do).

131. **as God ... me**, as I trust God will pardon me.

132. **O happy ... knee!** O blessed advantage gained by, etc.

133. **Yet ... fear**, my fear makes me still sick.

134. **twain**, two persons; see note on i. 1. 50.

135. **With all my heart**, from the bottom of my heart.

137. **for**, as regards; **trusty**, ironically.

138. **consorted crew**, traitors who have thrown in their lot together; 'crew' when not used of a ship's company has generally a contemptuous sense.

139. **at the heels**, closely; cp. *R. III.* iv. 1. 40, "Death and destruction dog thee *at the heels*."

140. **help ... powers**, help to arrange for the despatch of separate armed forces; **several**, like 'separate,' ultimately comes from the Lat. *separare*; we have the singular 'power' in the same sense in ii. 2. 124, iii. 2. 63.

143. **But I will have them**, without my getting them into my hands.

145. **and prove you true**, and may you prove loyal.

146. **Came ... new**, *i.e.* I hope to change your old nature to a new one; to make you give up such practices as those you have been guilty of.

SCENE IV.

1. **Did'st thou ... spake**, for the redundant object, see Abb. § 414.

2. **will rid**, *who* will rid.

3. **Was it not so**? was it not that he said?

5. **urged it**, dwelt forcibly upon it.

7. **wistly**, wistfully; with an earnest and meaning look. According to Skeat, **wistly** is probably a corruption of the M. E. *wisly* = certainly, verily, exactly, whence the senses of 'attentively,' etc., may have arisen; whilst 'wistfully' is probably a corruption of 'wishfully.'

8. **As who should say**, as one who should say; cp. *Macb.* iii. 6. 42; *M. V.* i. 2. 45; Shakespeare probably understood *who* in this idiom as a relative, but it was also used as = any one; see Abb. § 257.

9. **divorce .. heart**, free my heart from this terror.

11. **rid**, make away with; cp. *Temp.* i. 2. 364, "The red plague *rid* you."

SCENE V.

1, 2. **I have .. world**; I have been endeavouring to work out a comparison between my prison and the world in general.

3. **for because**, a pleonasm common in Shakespeare's day.

5. **hammer it out**, manage it in some way or other, whatever trouble it may cost me.

6. **I'll prove**, I will make; my brain shall by my efforts prove.

7. **these two beget**, these two *shall* beget.

8. **still-breeding**, continually breeding; cp. *Temp.* iii. 3. 64, "Kill the *still-closing* waters."

9. **people**, shall people: **this little world**, *i.e.* of himself, his 'microcosm,' as in *Cor.* ii. 1. 68.

10. **In humours ... world**, with thoughts as capricious, dissatisfied, as are the, etc.

13. **scruples**, obstacles, difficulties.

13, 14. **and do set ... word**, and oppose one text of Holy Writ against another.

15. '**Come, little ones.**' See *Mark*, x. 14, "Suffer the little children to come unto me, and forbid them not; for of such is the kingdom of heaven."

16, 7. **'It is ... eye.'** See *Matthew*, xix. 24, "And again I say unto you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God." Here Richard says that the words of the two texts are opposed to each other; **the postern**, literally a 'back-gate,' and so a small one; **needle's**, to be scanned, if not written, 'needls,' as in *M. N. D.* iii. 2. 204, *K. J.* v. 2. 157. Cp. also *K. J.* v. 4. 11, "*Unthread* the rude *eye* of rebellion."

18, 9. **Thoughts .. wonders**, ambitious thoughts conceive improbable wonders; for the insertion of the superfluous pronoun, see Abb. § 243: **how these**, etc., for instance, how these, etc.

21. **my ragged prison walls**, these rough walls of my prison; in apposition with, and explanatory of, **this hard world**. Cp. ii. *H. IV.*, *Induction*, 35, "And this worm-eaten hold of *ragged* stone."

22. **And, ... pride**, and, since they (the nails) are unable to do so, they (the thoughts) die unrepentant in their sin of pride.

23. **content**, contentment.

25. **Nor shall not**, the double negative adding emphasis: **silly**, simple.

26. **refuge their shame**, find an excuse for their disgrace; in their disgrace take refuge in the thought that, etc.

27. **have**, *sc.* sat.

28. **a kind of ease**, a sort of relief.

29, 30. **Bearing ... like.** In their comparison saddling their own misfortunes on the back, etc., and so relieving themselves.

34. **And so I am**, used in a double sense (1) and that I at once become in imagination, (2) and that is really the case with me.

36. **Then ... again**, *sc.* in imagination: **by and by**, a short while after.

38. **And straight am nothing**, and immediately I am (in imagination, as well as in reality) nothing.

39. **but man**, merely a mortal man.

41. **With being nothing**, by dying.

42. **keep time**, do not play out of time.

43. **When time is broke**, when (musical) time is not kept; for **broke**, see Abb. § 343. **proportion**, the Cl. Pr. Edd. compare *R. J.* ii. 4. 22, "He fights as you sing prick-song, *Keeps time*, distance, and *proportion*."

44. **in the music**, as regards the music.

45-8. **And here ... broke.** And here, in this prison, I have that delicate sense of hearing which enables me to find fault with want of harmony when caused by a string that is not in unison,

but, in regard to the harmony of my state when I was king, had not that nice sense which would recognize the discord that was in my kingdom; **to hear** my **true time broke**, to perceive the breaking of that time which should have been properly kept.

50. **his numbering clock**, its clock which tells the hours.

51. **My thoughts are minutes**, my thoughts are the minutes that go to make up the hour.

51, 2. **and with sighs** ... **watch**, the sighs accompanying my thoughts are as the ticking of a pendulum, and, as they are drawn, convey to my eyes, that represent the dial, the progress of the watch they keep. Schmidt explains **watches** as "the marks of the minutes on a dial-plate"; but these could hardly be said to be "jarred on" unless the dial was a movable one with a fixed hand; the word seems rather to allude to the record of time by the old watchmen. For **jar**, cp. *W. T.* i. 2. 43, "I love thee not a *jar* o' the clock behind What lady she her lord."

53. **a dial's point**, the hand of a clock or watch.

54. **still**, ever.

55. **sir**, a word often used in soliloquy when the speaker addresses himself as audience.

57. **the bell**, upon which the hour is struck in clocks: **sighs**, going with **minutes**; **tears**, with **times**; **groans**, with **hours**. This series of fanciful similes is thus explained by Henley: "It should be recollected that there are three ways in which a clock notices the progress of time, viz., by the vibration of the pendulum, the index on the dial, and the striking of the hour. To these the king, in his compassion, severally alludes; his sighs corresponding to the jarring of the pendulum, which at the time that it watches or numbers the seconds, marks also their progress in minutes on the dial or outward watch, to which the king compares his eyes; and the want of figures is supplied by a succession of tears, or (to use an expression of Milton) *minute drops:* his finger, by as regularly wiping these away, performs the office of the dial's point:—his clamorous groans are the sounds that tell the hour"...

58. **Runs** ... **joy**, hurries on bringing joy to Bolingbroke, not to me; *i.e.* the faster my time goes, the better pleased is Bolingbroke.

60. **his Jack o' the clock**, an automaton, outside the clocks of former days, holding a mallet in its hand with which, by the action of the machinery, it is made to strike the bell. The figure is sometimes to be seen nowadays in imitations of the antique.

61. **mads**, maddens.

62. **For though ... wits.** Bucknill, *The Mad Folk of Shakespeare*, pp. 223, 4, refers to i. *Samuel*, xvi., and ii. *Kings*, iii., as the earliest record of the effect of music upon madmen; and speaks of its use in modern times as being sometimes beneficial, though the effects are rarely lasting: for **holp**, see Abb. § 343.

63. **In me it seems**, judging from my own experience: **wise men**, men in possession of their wits.

64. **his heart**, the heart of him.

66. **Is a strange ... world**, is a strange ornament for any one to wear in this world which so universally hates me; **brooch**, an ornament worn in the hat, scarf, etc. Cp. Jonson, *The Poetaster*, i. 1, "*honour's a good brooch* to wear in a man's hat at all times."

67. **Thanks, noble peer**; said in good-humoured irony; so in i. *H. IV.* ii. 4. 14, 5, *Hostess.* "O Jesu, *my lord* the prince! *Prince.* How now, *my lady* the hostess!"

68. **The cheapest ... dear**, said with a pun on the words "royal," a coin worth ten shillings, and a "noble," worth six shillings and eightpence; a 'groat' was fourpence, hence the difference between the 'noble' and the 'royal' was ten groats; and says Richard, the cheaper of the two of them, the 'noble,' = twenty groats, is not worth more than half that sum, *i.e.* that he and the groom have greatly come down in the world. Tollet quotes the joke made by Queen Elizabeth which Shakespeare has here borrowed: "Mr. John Blower, in a sermon before her majesty, first said, 'My *royal* Queen,' and a little after, 'My *noble* Queen.' Upon which says the Queen, 'What, am I ten groats worse than I was.'" The same pun occurs in i. *H. IV.* ii. 4. 317, "*Host.* There is a *noble*man of the court at door who would speak with you ... *Prince.* Give him as much as will make him a *royal* man."

69. **What art thou**? for 'what' where we should use 'who,' see Abb. § 254.

70. **That sad dog**, that sullen-looking fellow.

71. **to make misfortune live**, *i.e.* by keeping me alive.

76. **yearn'd**, grieved; from A.S. *yrman*, to grieve, 'yearn' = to desire strongly, being from A.S. *gyrnan*, to be desirous. For this transitive sense, cp. *M. W.* iii. 5. 45, and for the impersonal use, *H. V.* iv. 3. 26.

78. **roan Barbary**, the roan-coloured (reddish-brown) horse named Barbary. Steevens thinks this story of Roan Barbary was probably an invention of Shakespeare's.

80. **dress'd**, groomed.

82. **How ... him**? how did the horse bear him?

85. **jade**, see note on iii. 3. 179.

87. **Would he not stumble**? was he not ready to stumble?

88. **Since ... fall**, *i.e.* he ought to have done so, for pride must have a fall.

90. **Forgiveness**, I ask your forgiveness; **rail on**, abuse.

94. **gall'd**, as a horse is by the spur: **jauncing** "may mean *hard riding*, as Cotgrave explains *jancer*, 'To stir a horse in the stable till he sweat withal,' or as our to *jaunt*" (Staunton).

95. **give place**, make room: **here is no longer stay**, you must not stay here any longer.

96. **'tis time ... away**, *i.e.* or else you will be ill treated by those here, who all hate me.

97. **What my ... say**. Cp. above, v. i. 102, "the rest let sorrow say."

98. **to fall to**, to begin your meal.

99. **Taste**, in old days, for fear of poison being mixed with the food or drink, it was customary for the dishes, etc., set before a sovereign to be tasted in his presence by a servant appointed for the purpose; cp. *K. J.* v. 6. 28, "who did *taste* to him?": **wont**, accustomed.

103. **is stale**, is vapid, has lost all taste to me.

105. **what means ... assault**? what does death mean by assaulting me in this barbarous way? *i.e.* what do you mean by assaulting me in this murderous fashion?

106. **thy death's instrument**, the instrument of your death.

109. **staggers**, causes to totter; this transitive sense is used figuratively in *H. VIII.* ii. 4. 112.

112. **gross**, heavy; a contrast to the lightness of the spirit.

115. **spill'd**, *i.e.* quenched the valour and spilt the blood.

116. **did well**, *sc.* **in killing him.**

118. **the rest**, the bodies of those slain by the king.

SCENE VI.

3. **Cicester**, written in full 'Cirencester,' but pronounced 'Cicester.'

6. **state**, majesty.

8. **Salisbury, Spencer**, so the folios, in agreement with Holinshed. The first quarto gives "Oxford, Salisbury, Blunt," etc.

9. **taking**, capture.

10. **At large discoursed**, set forth fully in all particulars.

12. **And to ... gains**, and will reward you adequately to your merits.

15. **consorted**, see note on v. 3. 138.

18. **wot**, know.

22. **to abide**, to suffer; more properly 'aby,' from M.E. *abyen*, A.S. *ábiegan*, to pay for; 'abide,' = wait for, being from A.S. *ábídan*.

25. **some reverend room**, some religious place.

26. **More ... hast**, other than that you already possess; **joy**, enjoy: cp. ii. *H. VI.* iv. 9. 1, "Was ever king that *joy'd* an earthly throne?"

27. **So as ... strife**, provided you live peacefully, you may die without molestation.

31. **Thy buried fear**, him who when living was dreaded by you, but who now is in his coffin; cp. v. 4. 2.

34-6. **for thou ... land**, for by your murderous hand you have done a deed which will bring reproach upon, etc.

37. **From ... deed**, it was in accordance with your own words that I did this deed.

40. **him murdered**, him who has been murdered.

41. **for thy labour**, as a reward for your pains.

46. **That blood ... grow**; that I should need to be watered by the blood of my enemies in order to prosper.

47. **that**, that which.

48. **sullen**, gloomy: **incontinent**, immediately; cp. *Oth.* iv. 3. 12, "He says he will return *incontinent*."

49. **to the Holy Land**, *i.e.* on a crusade, in the hope of atoning for his crime in having desired Richard's death.

INDEX TO THE NOTES

A

Abide, v. 6. 22.
Achieved, ii. 1. 254.
Advice, i. 3. 233.
Advised, i. 3. 188.
Affects (sb.), i. 4. 30.
Aggravate, i. 1. 43.
Allow, v. 2. 40.
Along, i. 3. 199.
Amazing, i. 3. 81.
Annoyance, iii. 2. 16.
Antic, iii. 2. 162.
Appeach, v. 2. 79.
Appeal, i. 1. 4, 27.
Approve, i. 2. 112.
Apricocks, iii. 4. 29.
Arbitrate, i. 1. 200.
Argument, i. 1. 12.
Attach. ii. 3. 156.
Attainder, iv. 1. 24.
Atone, i. 1. 202.
Attorneys-general, ii. 1. 203.

B

Baffle, i. 1. 170.
Balm, iii. 2. 55.
Band, i. 1. 2.
Barbed, iii. 3. 117.
Bay, ii. 3. 128.
Bay-trees, ii. 4. 8.
Beads, iii. 3. 147.
Beadsmen, iii. 2. 116.
Beholding, iv. 1. 160.
Beshrew, iii. 2. 204.
Betid, v. 1. 42.
Bias, iii. 4. 5.
Bills, iii. 2. 119.
Bonnet, i. 4. 31.
Boots (vb.), i. 1. 174.
Bowls, iii. 4. 3.

C

Caitiff, i. 2. 53.
Carver, ii. 3. 144.
Casements, v. 2. 14.
Caterpillars, ii. 3. 166.
Charters, blank, i. 4. 48.
Chopping, v. 3. 124.
Clap, iii. 2. 114.
Cloister (vb.), v. 1. 23.
Companions, v. 3. 7.
Compassionate, i. 3. 174.
Complexion, iii. 2. 194.
Complices, ii. 3. 165.
Composition, ii. 1. 73.
Conceit, ii. 3. 33.
Conduct, iv. 1. 157.
Converts (intrs. vb.), v. 1. 65.
Conveyers, iv. 1. 317.
Cormorant, ii. 1. 38.
Cousin, i. 1. 28.
Cozening, ii. 2. 69.
Cunning, i. 3. 163.

D

Danger, i. 1. 13.
Deceivable, ii. 3. 84.
Defend, i. 3. 18.
Depose, i. 3. 30.
Determinate, i. 3. 150.
Dispark'd, iii. 1. 23.
Disposition, ii. 2. 4.

E

Ear (vb.), iii. 2. 212.
English feasts, i. 3. 67.
Entertain, iii. 2. 4.
Envy, i. 2, 21.
Exactly, i. 1. 140.
Expedience, ii. 1. 287.
Expedient, i. 4. 39.

F

Fall (trs. vb.), iii. 4. 104.
Fantastic, i. 3. 299.
Fare (vb.) ii. 3. 23.
Favours, iv. 1. 168.
Foil, i. 3. 265.
Forfend, iv. 1. 129.
Fretted, iii. 3. 167.

G

Gage, i. 1. 69.
Gathering head, v. 1. 58.
Glose, ii. 1. 12.
Gnarling, i. 3. 292.
Gored, i. 3. 60.

H

Hallowmas, v. 1. 80.
Hardly, ii. 4. 2.
Haught, iv. 1. 254,
Headlong, v. 1. 65.
Heinous, iv. 1. 131.

I

Impeach, i. 1. 170.
Impress, iii. 1. 25.
Imp out, ii. 1. 292.
Incontinent, v. 6. 48.
Indifferent, ii. 3. 116.
Inhabitable, i. 1. 65.
Inherit, ii. 1. 83.
Inward, ii. 2. 11.

J

Jack-o'-the-clock, v. 5. 60.
Jar, v. 5. 51.
Jauncing, v. 5. 94.
Jewels, i. 3. 270.
Jewry, ii. 1. 55.
Journeyman, i. 3. 274.
Julius' tower, v. 1. 2.

K

Kerns, ii. 1. 156.
Knave, ii. 2. 96.
Knots, iii. 4. 46.

L

Letters-patents, ii. 1. 202.
Liege, i. 1. 7.
Lineaments, iii. 1. 9.
Livery, ii. 1. 204.
Lodge, iii. 3. 162.

M

Maid-pale, iii. 3. 98.
Manage, i. 4. 39; iii. 3. 179.
Manors, iv. 1. 212.
Map, v. 1. 12.
Measure (sb.), i. 3. 291.
Measure (vb.), iii. 2. 122.
Merit, i. 2. 156.
Miscreant, i. 1. 39.

Model. iii. 2. 153.
Motive, i. 1. 193.

N

Neighbour (adj.), i. 1. 119.
Noble, v. 5. 68.
Noisome, iii. 4. 38.

O

Odds, iii. 4. 89.

P

Pageant, iv. 1. 321.
Pale (sb.), iii. 4. 40.
Palmer's, iii. 3. 151.
Parasite, ii. 2. 70.
Parle, i. 1. 192.
Partial, i. 3. 241.
Peering, ii. 1. 271.
Pelican, ii. 1. 126.
Pelting, ii. 1. 60.
Perspectives, ii. 1. 18.
Peruse, iii. 3. 53.
Pill'd, ii. 1. 246.
Pines (trs. vb.), v. 1. 77.
Pitch, i. 1. 109.
Plague (vb.), iii. 1. 134.
Portcullis'd, i. 3. 167.
Power, ii. 2. 46.
Precedent, ii. 1. 130.
Presence, the, i. 3. 289.
Press'd, iii. 2. 58.
Proof, i. 3. 73.
Prosecute, ii. 1. 244.
Purchase, i. 3. 282.

Q

Quit, v. 1. 43.

R

Raged, ii 1. 70.
Range, iii. 2. 39.
Recreant, i. 1. 144.
Regreet, i. 2. 142.
Remember, i. 2. 269.
Repair, ii. 1. 216.
Repeals, ii. 2. 49.
Reversion, i. 4. 35.
Roundly, ii. 1. 120.
Rounds, iii. 2. 161.
Royalties, ii. 1. 190.
Ruth, iii. 4. 105.

S

Safeguard (vb.), i. 2. 35.
Securely, ii. 1. 266.
Set, iv. 1. 57.
Shadow, iv. 1. 292.
Sheer, v. 3. 61.
Shrewd, iii. 2. 69.
Signories, iii. 1. 22.
Signs of war, ii. 2. 74.
Sluiced out, i. 1. 103.
Spent, i. 1. 108.
Stand out, i. 4. 38.
Sterling, iv. 1. 264.
Stream (trs. vb.), iv. 1. 94.
Suggest, i. 1. 101.
Sullen, i. 3. 227.
Supplant, ii. 1. 156.
Sworn brother, v. 3. 61.
Sympathy, iv. 1. 33.

T

Tall, ii. 1. 286.
Task (vb.), iv. 1. 52.
Temper, iv. 1. 29.
Tender (vb.), i. 1. 32.
Testament, iii. 3. 94.
Tidings, ii. 1. 272.
Trade, iii. 3. 156.

Triumphs, v. 2. 52.
Twain, i. 1. 50.

U

Uncontroll'd, i. 3. 90.
Undeaf, ii. 1. 16.
Underbearing, i. 4. 29.
Unhappied, iii. 1. 10.

V

Venom (adj.), ii. 1. 19.

W

Warder, i. 3. 117.
Watch, v. 3. 9.
Waxen coat, i. 3. 75.
Wayward, ii. 1. 142.
Wistly, v. 4. 7.
Witnessing, ii. 2. 22.
Wot, ii. 1. 250.

Y

Yearn'd, v. 5. 76.

APPENDIX.

By THOS. CARTWRIGHT, B.A., B.Sc.,

Author of Appendices to "King Lear," "King Henry VIII.," etc.

I. Short Sketch of the Elizabethan Drama.

At the time of the accession of Elizabeth, the drama for the most part consisted of Moralities or Allegorical Plays.

The Morality was a representation in which some Lesson of duty was taught by personified qualities, such as Mercy, Justice, Temperance, and Riches.

The various characters were brought together in a rude kind of plot, the outcome of which was the triumph of Virtue or the establishment of some moral principle. Satan was always introduced, and the humorous element was supplied by his torments at the hands of the Vice—a low jocular buffoon, who kept the audience in a "fit of mirth." The *Cradle of Security* and *Hit the Nail on the Head* are two examples of popular Moralities. The Morality finally died out about the end of Elizabeth's reign.

The Revival of Learning was in great part the cause of the downfall of the Morality play. The old Greek and Roman plays became more known, and writers of the drama took these plays as their model.

At first the Virtues and Vices of the Morality gave way to characters from classical mythology. The plot too, instead of treating of Christian morals, was taken from the same source. This kind of drama was very fashionable at court throughout the reign of Elizabeth. The play generally abounded with compliments to the Queen, or to the nobles who were the patrons of the players.

The Interludes of John Heywood form a kind of connecting link between the Morality and the regular drama. These plays were written for representation at court during the reign of Henry VIII. They were short humorous plays and resembled in many respects our modern Farce. The characters were

mostly drawn from real life, although the 'Vice' of the Morality play was still retained.

The Reformation hastened the change from the Morality play to the modern drama. The Interludes and Moralities were used to support either the Catholic or the Protestant side; and the plays were full of sneer, jest, and satire, which the opposing sides hurled fiercely at each other.

According to most authorities, the first stage of the regular drama begins with the first English comedy, *Ralph Roister Doister*. This play was written by Nicholas Udall, master of Eton, and although performed before 1551, it was not published till 1566. The plot is woven round the adventures of a foolish town fop, and the manners represented are those of the middle class of the period. The picture given in this play of London citizen life in the sixteenth century is extremely interesting and instructive. The earliest known English tragedy is *Gosboduc, or Ferrex and Porrex*. It was written by Sackville and Norton and was first represented in 1562. The plot was taken from an ancient British legend like *King Lear*, but the piece was too heavy and solemn for the taste of the audience. In 1564, Richard Edwards combined tragedy and comedy in *Damon and Pythias*. The plot was taken from classical mythology. In all probability it was this play that was performed before the Queen at Whitehall during the Christmas festivities, 1564-65. This play was well received by the public.

The success of these plays quickly led to the production of a large number of dramas. They were, for the most part, written by men who were well acquainted with the classical drama, and who chose not only the romances of Italy and Spain for their plots, but also narratives from the Chronicle Histories of England. Among the dramatists who immediately preceded Shakespeare and who wrote during what has been termed the Second Stage of the drama, the most noted were Marlowe, Peele, Greene, Nash, and Lodge. They had all received a University education, and were all writing for the London stage between the years 1585 and 1593.

Christopher Marlowe was born at Canterbury in 1564. He received his education at the King's School of his native city and at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge. Till 1587 the plays for the public had been written in prose and rime, but in this year Marlowe produced his play of *Tamberlaine the Great* in blank verse. In his *Life and Death of Dr. Faustus, The Jew of Malta*, and *Edward II.*, Marlowe developed blank verse and caused its general adoption by writers of dramatic poetry. In this manner, Marlowe may be said in some degree to have prepared the way for the mighty creations of Shakespeare.

Of the rest of the dramatists mentioned above, Robert Greene generally ranks next below Marlowe. He was born at Norwich

in 1560, and received his education at Cambridge. More than forty works are ascribed to his pen. His chief plays were *Alphonso*, *Orlando Furioso*, *Friar Bacon*, and *The Scottish Historie of James IV*. In Greene's pamphlet, *A Groatsworth of Wit bought with a Million of Repentance*, written when its author was on his death-bed, we find the first certain reference to Shakespeare. Greene warns three of his fellow-authors, who have been identified with Marlowe, Peele, and Nash (or Lodge) against players: "Yes, trust them not: for there is an upstart Crow, beautified with our feathers, that with his *tiger's heart wrapt in a player's hide*, supposes he is as well able to bombast out a blank verse as the best of you: and being an absolute *Johannes factotum*, is in his own conceit the only Shake-scene in a country." This pamphlet was published by Greene's friend, Henry Chettle. Some three months later, in December, 1592, Chettle himself published a pamphlet entitled *Kind Hart's Dream*. In it he offered a liberal apology to Shakespeare, for making public Greene's words. He says: "I am as sorry as if the original fault had been my fault, because myself have seen his (Shakespeare's) demeanour no less civil, than he excellent in the quality he professes; besides, divers of worship have reported his uprightness of dealing, which argues his honesty, and his facetious grace in writing, that approves his art."

William Shakespeare was born at Stratford-on-Avon, Warwickshire, in April, 1564. His father, John Shakespeare, who married in 1557, Mary Arden, the daughter of his landlord, was a prosperous burgess of Stratford. William received his education at the Free Grammar School of his native town. In consequence of his father's difficulties, when he was only thirteen years of age, he was taken from school either to assist in business or to earn a living in some way for himself. What his employment was, or how he spent his time during the period between his leaving school and his removal to London, cannot be answered with certainty. The story told by Rowe of the deer-stealing in Charlecote woods is without proof, but it is most probable that the early period of Shakespeare's manhood was wild and riotous. When he was nineteen years of age he married Anne Hathaway, who was some eight years older than himself. Whether the marriage proved a happy one or the reverse is a matter of conjecture. They had three children—Susanna, baptized May 26, 1583, and twins, Judith and Hamnet, born in February, 1585. Shakespeare left Stratford and came to London in 1586 or 1587. Here he met with Marlowe and Greene, and became an actor and playwright. How he lived when he first arrived in London we do not know; but it is certain he soon became prosperous. In 1589 he held a share in the Blackfriars Theatre, and not many years later he became a part-owner of the Globe Theatre. During these early years in London, besides acting, he did work

for the stage by touching up old plays and writing new ones. The words of Greene, mentioned above, show clearly that in 1592 Shakespeare's fame as an author had roused jealous feelings in some of the dramatists of the day.

Of Shakespeare as an actor we know but little. The Ghost in *Hamlet*, and Adam in *As You Like It*, are said to have been his favourite parts. He was a member of the Lord Chamberlain's company, and appeared before the Queen on more than one occasion.

He finally retired to his native town in 1612. During the twenty-six years he had spent in London, he had become wealthy, famous, and honoured by the special favour of the Queen. He never forgot Stratford. Every year of his stay in London, he is said to have paid a visit to his family. He had bought a house—New Place—at Stratford in 1597, and here he spent the remaining years of his life. He died on April 23, 1616, his fifty-second birthday.

Of the thirty-six plays which Shakespeare has given to the world, *Macbeth*, *King Lear*, *Romeo and Juliet*, *Hamlet*, and *Othello* are generally considered as the greatest of the tragedies; *As You Like It*, *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, and *The Merchant of Venice*, as the finest comedies; and *Coriolanus*, *Richard III.*, and *Julius Caesar* as the most prominent of the historical plays.

Second only to Shakespeare in the drama of this period stands Ben Jonson. This dramatist was born in 1574. After receiving some education at Westminster School, he became a soldier, and fought in the Netherlands. On his return to England, he entered St. John's College, Cambridge, where he remained but for a short time. He produced forty-six plays. Of these the best known is the still-acted comedy, *Every Man in his Humour*. The majority of his productions were masques, or short pieces for representation at court. In these the words held a secondary place to the music, dumb show, and dresses. *Cataline* and *Sejanus* are Jonson's principal tragedies; and, besides the comedy mentioned above, he wrote *The Alchemist*, and *Volpone*, or *The Fox*.

Many dramatists wrote towards the end of this period. Among these the names of Beaumont and Fletcher, Massinger, John Ford, and John Webster stand out prominently. The chief plays of Beaumont and Fletcher are *Philaster*, *The Maid's Tragedy*, *King and No King*. Fletcher alone wrote, among other plays, *The Faithful Shepherdess*—a play remarkable for its beautiful poetry. Massinger produced thirty-seven plays, the best-known being *The New Way to Pay Old Debts*. John Ford's *Perkin Warbeck* has been described as "the best historical drama after Shakespeare." His other best-known plays are *The Broken Heart* and *Love's Sacrifice*. John Webster is best known as the author of a famous tragedy, *The Duchess of Malfi*.

II. Representation of a Play.

At the commencement of Elizabeth's reign the general public had opportunities of witnessing plays performed on the stage erected either in the open air or in some inn-yard. In the year 1576 three theatres were set up in London. The servants of the Earl of Leicester built their theatre at Blackfriars, while "The Theatre" and "The Curtain" were erected in Shoreditch fields.

The greater part of the interior of the above mentioned theatres was open to the weather, only the stage and a portion of the gallery being covered. The stage consisted of a bare room, the walls of which were covered with tapestry. When a tragedy was to be enacted, the tapestry was often removed and a covering of black substituted. Running along the back of the stage, at a height of from eight to ten feet above the floor, was a kind of gallery. This served for a variety of purposes. On it, those actors who were supposed to speak from upper windows, towers, mountain sides, or any elevated place, took their stand. There was no movable scenery. Sometimes a change of scene was represented by the introduction of some suggestive article of stage furniture. Thus, for example, a bough of a tree was brought on to represent a forest; a cardboard imitation of a rock served for a mountainous place, or for the pebbly beach of the sea-shore. Wooden imitations of horses and towers were also introduced. But the most common way of indicating a change of scene was by hanging out a board bearing in large letters the name of the place of action.

A flag was unfurled on the roof of a theatre when a performance was about to be given.

Usually the play commenced at three o'clock, and lasted two or three hours. The pit or "yard" of the theatre was occupied by the lower classes, who had to stand during the whole performance. The nobility took their seats either in the boxes or on the rush-strewn stage. A flourish of trumpets was the signal that the play was about to commence. When the trumpets had sounded a third time, a figure clothed in a long black robe came forward and recited the prologue. The curtain in front of the stage then divided and the play began.

The actors appeared in costumes which, though sometimes costly, were not always in accordance with the time and place demanded by the play. They acted their parts in masks and wigs; and the female characters were always filled by boys or smooth-faced young men.

Between the acts there was dancing and singing, and sometimes at the close the clown would perform a jig to send the audience home in good humour. Finally, the actors assembled on the stage, knelt down, and offered up a prayer for the reigning monarch.

III. Classification of Shakespeare's Plays, with date of each play (ascertained or conjectured), according to Professor Dowden.

COMEDIES.

Love's Labour's Lost. 1590.
Comedy of Errors. 1591.
Two Gentlemen of Verona. 1592-93.
Midsummer-Night's Dream. 1593-94.
Merchant of Venice. 1596.
Taming of the Shrew. ? 1597.
Merry Wives of Windsor. ? 1598.
Much Ado about Nothing. 1598.
As You Like It. 1599.
Twelfth Night. 1600-1601.
All's Well that Ends Well. ? 1601-1602.
Measure for Measure. 1603.
Troilus and Cressida. ? 1603; revised, ? 1607.
Tempest. 1610.
Winter's Tale. 1610-11.

HISTORIES.

1 Henry VI. 1590-91.
2 and 3 Henry VI. 1591-92.
Richard III. 1593.
Richard II. 1594.
King John. 1595.
1 and 2 Henry IV. 1597-98.
Henry V. 1599.
Henry VIII. 1612-13.

TRAGEDIES.

Titus Andronicus. 1588-90.
Romeo and Juliet. ? 1591, 1596-97.
Julius Caesar. 1601.
Hamlet. 1602.
Othello. 1604.
Lear. 1605.
Macbeth. 1606.
Antony and Cleopatra. 1607.
Coriolanus. 1608.
Timon. 1607-1608.
Pericles. 1608.
Cymbeline. 1609.
Two Noble Kinsmen. 1612.

IV. Analysis of the Play.

See Introduction.

V. Sketches of the Chief Characters.

Richard and Bolingbroke. See Introduction, pp. xxi and xxiv, and note the following:

"The part of Richard gives the chief interest to the plot. His folly, his vices, his misfortunes, his reluctance to part with his crown, his fear to keep it, his weak and womanish regrets, his starting tears, his fits of hectic passion, his smothered majesty, pass in succession before us and make a picture as natural as it is affecting."—Hazlitt.

"The character of Bolingbroke, afterwards Henry IV., is drawn with a masterly hand: patient for occasion, and then steadily availing himself of it; seeing his advantage afar off, but only seizing on it when he has it within his reach; humble, crafty, bold and aspiring; encroaching by regular but slow degrees; building power with opinion, and cementing opinion by power."—Hazlitt.

"Richard is so steeped in voluptuous habits that he must needs be a voluptuary even in his sorrow, and make a luxury of woe itself; pleasure has so thoroughly mastered his spirit, that he cannot think of bearing pain as a duty or an honour, but merely as a license for the pleasure of maudlin self-compassion; so he hangs over his griefs, hugs them, nurses them, buries himself in them, as if the sweet agony thereof were to him a glad refuge from the stings of self-reproach, or a clear release from the exercise of manly thought."—Hudson, *Shakespeare; his Life, Art, and Character*, ii. 55.

"There is in Richard a constant overflow of emotions from a total incapability of controlling them, and thence a waste of that energy which should have been reserved for actions, in the passion and effort of mere resolves and menaces. The consequence is moral exhaustion, and rapid alternations of unmanly despair and ungrounded hope—every feeling being abandoned for its direct opposite upon the pressure of external accident."—Coleridge, *Notes and Lectures upon Shakspeare*, quoted by Mr. Rolfe.

"Cold and considerate compared to the fanciful, a profound statesman compared to the romanticist and the poet, a quick horseman spurring the heavy overburdened Richard, bearing the misfortune of banishment with manly composure, and easing his nature by immediate search for redress, whilst Richard at the mere approach of misfortune immediately sinks, this man appears throughout as too unequal an adversary to the other."

"All Bolingbroke's strength and craft are his own. His is a resolute gaze which sees his object afar off, and he has persistency and energy of will to carry him forward without faltering. He is not cruel, but shrinks from no deed that is needful to his purpose because the deed is cruel. His faculties are strong and well-knit. There is no finer contrast in Shakespeare's historical plays than that between the figures of the formidable king of deeds and the romantic king of hectic feelings and brilliant words."—Professor Dowden, *Shakspeare Primer*, page 89.

The Queen. Richard's wife is depicted by Shakespeare as a true loving woman, whose thoughts are all for the King, hence her anxiety about him when absent and her grief when she learns of his misfortune and her willingness to share his imprisonment.

"Banish us both and send the King with me,"

she says, and, later, this being refused, she begs

"Then whither he goes, thither let me go."

Moreover she is less disposed than he to kiss the rod, hence her questioning reproach

"Wilt thou, pupil-like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility
Which art a lion and a king of beasts?"

Altogether the character of the Queen, lightly as it is sketched, suggests a woman of affection, sense, and determination.

The Duke of York. The incidents of importance in Richard II. as yielding insight into the character of York are (1) his expostulation with the King for seizing the estates of Bolingbroke. This argues a just and sagacious mind. But the fact that the protest does not continue after its expression points to a feeble time-serving trait that mars this apparent robustness and honesty; (2) his regency, which points to a loyalty that was sincere, but which attached itself rather to the office than to the person of the King; (3) his vacillation in dealing with the invasion of Bolingbroke, whom he first condemns and then so far condones as to declare himself neuter; (4) his conduct in respect to his son Aumerle's treason, where his fervent loyalty to the throne shows how completely he has attached himself to the new king, and also how sincere his attachment is. Here again, however, there are signs of vacillation strongly marked.

John o' Gaunt. The loyalty, patriotism, and fatherly affection of Gaunt are very prominently portrayed by Shakespeare. The scene where the statesman's head wars against the father's heart is one of great pathos out of which Gaunt stands forth a man of honour and of feeling. His colloquy with his sister shows how deep-seated was his loyalty to the throne, whilst his reproaches

to the King when on his death-bed are as sincere as they are well-timed and deserved. His fervent love of country as expressed in the following lines:

> "This royal throne of kings, this sceptred isle,
> This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,
> This other Eden, demi-paradise.
> . . . . . .
> This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England."

is inspiring to an eminent degree, whilst the whole of his thoughts and actions seem to be those of a man whose race is run and who sees visions and dreams dreams. A man then of lofty patriotism, of warm affection, and of unswerving, yet by no means blind loyalty is what we see in Shakespeare's John o' Gaunt.

Aumerle is a man of little principle and of less loyalty. He is the first to support and the first to plot against Bolingbroke. His cowardice is apparent in his abject appeal to the King's mercy and in his desertion of his fellow-conspirators. There is nothing in his character to suggest the nobility with which Shakespeare afterwards credits him in Henry V. where he fights bravely and dies at Agincourt.

Thomas Mowbray appears but little, and that little suggests either a consummate actor or a high-minded man, insomuch as either he lied to shield the King in respect to Gloucester's death or he bore himself with dignity and forbearance against a foul accusation. That Bolingbroke contemplated his recall from banishment and the manner of his death, suggest rather the latter than the former alternative.

Northumberland is apparently a "haughty insulting man," who supports Bolingbroke out of regard for his order rather than from devotion to his person. In the deposition scene he plays the contemptible part of striving to humiliate a fallen man, so much so that even Bolingbroke is moved to interpose.

Carlisle wins our admiration by his sturdy devotion to the deposed King and by his plucky condemnation of the tactics, successful though they have been, of the usurper. That this sturdiness proceeded from his belief in "the right divine of kings to govern wrong" does not detract from its value however much it may impel us to condemn his theology and even his intelligence. His sincerity and boldness are refreshing. With Bolingbroke we may well exclaim

> "High sparks of honour in thee have I seen."

The Duchess of York appeals to us as a loyal and devoted mother, nor does the worthlessness of her son Aumerle prevent us from admiring the true womanliness of her character and of her conduct. The Duchess of York also claims our sympathy in

her affection for her murdered brother the Duke of Gloucester, and if her thirst for vengeance is in any wise unrighteous it is at least strikingly human, as is also her grief and despair in seeing the wicked exalted.

VI. Proverbial and Pithy Sayings.

"Things sweet to taste prove to digestion sour." I. iii. 236.

"All places that the eye of heaven visits
Are to a wise man ports and happy havens." I. iii. 275-6.

"There is no virtue like necessity." I. iii. 228.

"Woe doth the heavier sit,
Where it perceives it is but faintly borne." I. iii. 281-2.

"O who can hold a fire in his hand
By thinking on the frosty Caucasus?
Or cloy the hungry edge of appetite
By base imagination of a feast?
Or wander naked in December snow
By thinking on fantastic Summer's heat?
O no! the apprehension of the good
Gives but the greater feeling to the worse." I. iii. 243.

"Where words are scarce, they are seldom spent in vain,
For they breathe truth that breathe their words in vain." II. i. 7-8.

"Violent fires soon burn out themselves,
Small showers last long, but sudden storms are short." II. i. 34.

"This royal throne of kings, this sceptred isle,
This earth of majesty, this seat of Mars,
This other Eden, demi-Paradise;
This fortress built by Nature for herself,
Against infection and the hand of war;
This happy breed of men, this little world,
This precious stone set in the silver sea,
Which serves it in the office of a wall,
Or as a moat defensive to a house,
Against the envy of less happier lands;
This blessed plot, this earth, this realm, this England." II. i. 40.

"The ripest fruit first falls." II. i. 153.

"Comfort's in heaven; and we are on the earth
Where nothing lives but crosses, cares and grief." II. ii. 79.

"Everything is left at six and seven." II. ii. 122.

"Numbering sands and drinking oceans dry." II. ii. 146.

"Evermore thanks the exchequer of the poor." II. iii. 165.

"Not all the water in the rough rude sea
Can wash the balm from an anointed king." III. ii. 54-5.

"Weak men must fall, for heaven still guards the right." III. ii. 62.

"Death will have his day." III. ii. 103.

"Wise men ne'er sit and wail their woes." III. ii. 178.

"Let's talk of graves, of worms, of epitaphs." III. ii. 145.

"And nothing can we call our own but death,
And that small model of the barren earth
Which serves as parts and cover to our bones,
For heaven's sake, let us sit upon the ground
And tell sad stories of the death of kings." III. ii. 152.

"He is come to ope
The purple testament of bloody war." III. iii. 93.

"And my large kingdom for a little grave,
A little grave, an obscure grave." III. iii. 153.

"Gave
His body to that pleasant country's earth,
And his pure soul unto his captain, Christ,
Under whose colours he had fought so long." IV. i. 97.

"A mockery king of snow." IV. i. 260.

"Kiss the rod." V. i. 32.

"As in a theatre, the eyes of men,
After a well-graced actor leaves the stage,
Are idly bent on him that enters next,
Thinking his prattle to be tedious." V. ii. 23.

"Pride must have a fall." V. v. 88.

VII. Metre.

The blank verse in which Shakespeare wrote his plays consists of lines or verses containing ten syllables, the second, fourth, sixth, eighth, and tenth of which are accented, the odd syllables being unaccented. Such a line or verse is called an iambic pentameter, an iambus being a combination or foot of two syllables, the second of which is stressed or accented, the first having no accent, and a pentameter (Greek *pente*, five, *metron*, measure) is a combination of five such feet. The chief charm of this metre is its extreme simplicity. Provided proper care be taken to avoid monotony, blank verse is capable of very great literary beauty. It is the great merit of Shakespeare that he rang the changes of infinite variety on this simple metrical combination as no writer before or after him has been able to do. Some of the licenses permissible to the writer of blank verse, to relieve the

monotony thereof, will be given below; meanwhile we proceed to furnish one or two examples of orthodox iambic pentametres from *Richard II.*:

"Or clóy | the hún | gry ed'ge | of ap' | petíte, |
By báse | imág | iná | tion óf | a féast." | I. iii. 296-7.

"This róy | al hoúse | of kíngs, | this scép | tred is'le, |
This éarth | of máj | esty', | this séat | of Márs." | II. i. 40-1.

The chief devices for relieving the monotony of ordinary blank verse iambic pentameters are:

1. Placing the accent on the *first* instead of on the second syllable of a dissyllabic foot. This gives us the *Trochee*, which is the appropriate name for a foot of two syllables, the first of which carries the accent as in the word *háppy*.

2. The introduction of monosyllabic feet.

3. The employment of hypermetric syllables, resulting in trisyllabic or even quadrisyllabic feet.

(1) *The accent thrown back on the first syllable.* This occurs most commonly after a pause, wherefore, since the pause occurs most frequently at the end of a line, the trochee is most often found at the beginning of a line. The accent thus produced is known as the *pause accent.*

"*Loók*, what | I spéak | my lífé | shall próve | it trúe." | I. i. 87.

"*Blood'y* | with spur' | ring, fi'er | y red' | with hast'e." | II. iii. 58.

"*Cómfort* | my liége | why look's | your gráce | so pále?" III. ii. 75.

See also I. i. 28, I. i. 54, I. i. 88, I. ii. 56, I. ii. 73, I. iii. 7, I. iii. 88, I. iii. 148, II. i. 88, II. i. 187, II. ii. 108, II. iii. 58, etc.

(2) *Monosyllabic feet employed.* When great stress is required to be placed upon a monosyllable, no other syllable is allowed to stand in the same foot with it, so that an incomplete foot consisting of a strongly accented monosyllable results. Such monosyllables are most often (1) those containing long vowels or diphthongs, (2) those containing a vowel followed by *r*, and (3) imperative or exclamatory monosyllables as "speak!" "peace!". It is to be observed that this use of a monosyllable to serve as a dissyllable may be explained as due, either to the natural tendency to dissyllabise a monosyllable whose vowel is long, or to the necessity for a pause after an imperative word, which is most conveniently accomplished by the omission of an unaccented syllable, the place of which would often be supplied by an appropriate gesture by the actor.

Although in the scansion which follows the monosyllabic is dissyllabised it is not to be presumed that this is necessary. On

the contrary, the place of the wanting syllable would often be best supplied by a pause or a gesture as above intimated.

(*a*) *Monosyllabic feet with long vowels or diphthongs.*

"Yea, look'st | thou pá | *le*? Lét | me sée | the wríting."
v. ii. 57.

(*b*) *Monosyllabic feet with vowel or diphthong followed by "r."*

"Who, whén | they sée | the *hó* | *urs* ripe | on ear'th." |
I. ii. 7.

"And ín | compás | sion wéep | the *fi'* | *re* oút." | v. i. 48.
"Of góod | old A' | brahám | *Lórds* | appéllants." | IV. i. 104.
"And lóng | live Hén | ry *foú* | *rth* ó' | the náme." | IV. i. 112.
"The dáte | less lím | it óf | thy *dé* | *ar* wíll." | I. iii. 151.

(*c*) *Emphatic monosyllabic feet.*

"*Stay*, | the king | hath thrown | his war | der down."
I. iii. 118.

"What sáys | he? *Ná* | *y* nó | thing; áll | is sáid." II. i. 148.
"Géntle | *mén* | will yét | go mús | ter mén." | II. ii. 108.
"In my kins | *mán* | *whóm* | the kíng | hath wrónged." |
II. ii. 114.

Not only are monosyllables converted into dissyllables, but also words of two, three, or more syllables are lengthened, frequently by the addition of an "*l*" or "*r*." This is referred to by Sidney Walker in his *Shakespeare's Versification* in the following words: "Words such as 'juggler,' 'tickling,' 'kindling,' 'England,' 'angry,' 'children,' and the like are frequently pronounced by Elizabethan poets as if a vowel were interposed between the liquid and the preceding mute." Examples in Richard II. of this lengthening of words are: *Engeland*, IV. i. 17; *redoubeled* (4 syllables) I. iii. 80.

In this connection must be noted *musicians* (4 syllables), I. iii. 228; *imitation* (5 syllables), II. i. 23; *succession* (4 syllables), II. i. 179; *correction* (4 syllables), IV. i. 77. *Physician* (5 syllables), I. i. 154. The "*ed*" final is sometimes pronounced as a separate syllable for the sake of the metre, as *accused*, I. i. 17; *contrived*, I. i. 96; *couched*, I. iii. 98, etc.

(3) *One or more, extra* (*hypermetric*), *syllables.*

(*a*) *At the end of a line.*

"Námely | to appéal | each óth | er of | hígh tréa*son*." |
I. i. 27.

"Came I' | appél | lant tó | this prínce | ly pre*sence*." | I. i. 34.
"Call hím | a sláud | rous ców | ard ánd | a vil'*lain*." | I. i. 61;

and in hundreds of other cases which the student will readily detect.

(*b*) *At the beginning of a line.*

"I *had* thóught | my lórd | to *have* learned | his héalth | of yóu." | II. iii. 24.

(*c*) *In the body of a line.*

"Lies ín | their púrs*es* | and whó | so em'p | ties thém." | II. ii. 130.

"As blánks | benévo | lences ánd | I wót | not whát." | II. i. 250.

"Thou Rích | ard sháll | *to* the Dúke | of Nór | folk." | I. ii. 38.

Polysyllabic names, and less frequently other polysyllables, when placed at the end of a line, often receive but one accent, the rest of the syllables being hypermetric, and when lists of names occur in the body of a passage, great liberties are taken with the metre.

"That Hàr | ry Duke | of Hére | ford, Ráin | old Lórd *Cobham*, |
Sir Thóm | as Er'p | inghám, | Sir Jóhn | Ramstón, |
Sir Jóhn | Norbéry, | Sír Rób | ert Wá | tertón | and Fránc*is*
Quoint." | II. i. 279-84.

"It mús*t* | be grán*t* | ed I' | am Dúke | of Lánc*aster*." | II. iii. 124.

"On án | y óth | er groúnd | inháb | itá*ble*." | I. i. 65.

"That which | he háth | detáined | for léwd | emplóy*ment*." | I. i. 90.

"Hereford" is to be scanned as a dissyllable, "Herford,' throughout the play.

4. *Accent and emphasis.* Abbot remarks (§ 453) that the syllable receiving the rhythmic accent is by no means necessarily emphatic. It need only be emphatic relatively to the unaccented syllable or syllables in the same foot, and may be much less emphatic than the other accented syllables in the same verse. In Shakespeare's time there was apparently a greater stress upon the word "the" than is the case with us, hence the following:

"Through *thé* | false páss | age óf | thy thróat | thou liést." | I. i. 125.

"Draws *thé* | sweet ín | fant bréath | of gén | tle sléep." | I. iii. 133.

Monosyllabic prepositions sometimes receive the accent.

"Pierced *tó* | the sóul | with slán | der's vén | omed spéar." | I. i. 171.

"Or *with* | pale bég | gar féar | impéach | my heíght." | I. i. 189.

"The swél | ling díff | rence *of* | your sét | tled háte." | I. i. 201.

5. *Broken verses.* When a line is broken up between two speakers, the verse is either

(*a*) *Regular*, as

"Which bréathed | this póis | on.
Ráge | must bé | withstóod." |
I. i. 173.

Or (*b*) *Overlapping* of the former by the latter speaker in the completion of the verse.

"What say's | his má | jesty'? |
| Sorrów | and griéf | of heárt." |
III. iii. 184.

(*c*) There may also be what Abbott calls *Amphibious section*, in which a fragment of a verse comes between and completes two other fragments. The best example of this in Richard II. is as follows:

"I wíll | appéach | the víl*lain.* |
| Whát is | the mát*ter*? |
Péace, | foolísh | wo*mán.*" |

where, it is to be observed, the two feet

| Whát is | the mát*ter*? |

make an iambic pentameter, here more or less imperfect, with the three feet that precede and with the three that follow them. This peculiarity is neither so common nor so pronounced in this play as in many other of Shakespeare's works.

6. *Elision*, as might be expected, is a very common device for avoiding what would otherwise be hypermetrical syllables by the suppression of a vowel sound. The commonest elisions, in addition to *'ll* for *will*, *'re* for *are*, *n't* for *not*, which are in general use to-day, are *th'* for *the*, *t'* for *to*, *'t* for *it*, *'s* for *is* or *his*, *i'* for *in*, *'em* for *them*. A light vowel following a liquid (*l*, *m*, *n*, *r*) is slurred, and, so far at least as concerns the metre, is lost. This is exceedingly common with *r*. Almost invariably when *th* and *v* come between two vowels, they are dropped, and the two syllables are run into one. In the middle of a trisyllable the vowel *i*, when unaccented, is often dropped.

Prefixes and suffixes may be dropped. The former are frequently so treated, the latter not so frequently. It would be tedious to refer to all the instances in which the peculiarities are illustrated in Richard II., hence only one or two typical examples will be given haphazard under each head.

th' for the. This is very common when "the" is followed by a vowel.

"Th' accús | er ánd | th' accús | ed frée | ly spéak." | I. i. 17.

"Th' unstóop | ing fir'm | ness óf | my úp | right sóul." |
I. i. 121.

't for it.

"Your grác | e's pár | don, ánd | I hópe | I hád 't." | I. i. 141.

's for is.

"To áll | his lánds | and síg | noriés: | when hé 's | retúrn'd." | IV. i. 87.

Light vowel slurred before a liquid.

"Here tó | make góod | the *bois* | *t'rous* loúd | appéal." | I. i. 4.

"Aimed át | your high | ness nó | invét | 'rate málice." | I. i. 14.

"Sluiced oút | his *in'n* | *cent* sóul | through stréams | of blóod." | I. i. 103.

"Lord *Marsh'l* | commánd | our óf | ficérs | at ar'ms." | I. i. 104.

Also *li'r* (liar), I. i. 114; *spir't* (spirit), I. iii. 70 (this is the usual pronunciation of spirit in Shakespeare); *rememb'r*, I. iii. 269; *they're*, II. i. 7; *flatt'rers*, II. i. 100; *en'mies*, II. i. 183; *cov'nant*, II. iii. 50; *aft'r*, III. ii. 3; *rev'rence*, III. ii. 172; *cap'tal*, IV. i. 151, and in many other places.

v dropped between two vowels.

"I hear'd | you sáy | that yoú | had *rath'r* | refúse." | IV. i. 15.

"But fór | our trús | ty *bróth'r* | in láw, | the ábbot." | V. iii. 137.

"Repróach | and dís | solú | tion háng | eth over (*o'er*) *him.*" | II. i. 258.

Unaccented i dropped in trisyllables.

"Dogs, *éas* | *ily* wón | to faw'n | on an' | y mán." | III. ii. 130.

Prefixes dropped. *'light*, I. i. 82; *'complices*, II. iii. 165; *'gainst*, I. iii. 190 and V. ii. 66; *'plaining*, I. iii. 175; *'plaints*, V. iii. 127; *'vantage*, I. iii. 218; *inhabitable* (uninhabitable), I. i. 65; *'haviour*, I. iii. 77; *'rag'd*, II. i. 70; *'tend*, IV. i. 196.

Suffixes dropped. *Affects* (affections), I. iv. 30; *haught* (haughty), IV. i. 254; *mads* (maddens), V. v. 61; *threat* (threatens), III. iii. 90; *yond* (yonder), III. iii. 91.

7. *Incomplete verses* occur either at the beginning or at the end of speeches, and in excited dialogue. There is good reason for the belief that many of these irregular verses are due to corruptions that have been allowed to creep into the text. They also mark pauses, the missing feet being filled in by appropriate action as I. ii. 42:

"Why thén | I wíll. | Farewéll, | old Gaun't," |

where a long pause, followed by the shaking of hands, fills up the metre.

8. *Alexandrines.* An Alexandrine is a verse of six feet, each containing two syllables, the second of which is accented, *i.e.* it is an iambic hexameter. The following is a good example of this kind of metre, by Dryden, who revelled in Alexandrines, which are, it may be observed, in high favour amongst French poets.

"And nów | by win'ds | and wav'es | my lif'e | less lim'bs | are tos'sed."

It has been questioned whether Shakespeare ever really made use of iambic hexameters, and much ingenuity has been shown in explaining away apparent Alexandrines. Abbott's statement is not quite so sweeping. He says that a perfect Alexandrine is seldom found in Shakespeare, and certainly the verses of twelve syllables may frequently, by elision and by the postulation of hypermetric syllables, be made to scan as iambic pentameters. But it must be admitted that verses of twelve syllables, every other one of which bears the accent, *i.e.* iambic hexameters, do occur with sufficient frequency to admit of little doubt that Shakespeare knew of the value of the Alexandrine and further made use of it to vary his iambic pentameters. This is especially the case in Richard II.

Undeniable Alexandrines.

"More than' | your lord's' | depárt | ure weép | not; móre's | not seén." | II. ii. 25.

"Found truth' | in all' | but óne; | I, in' | twelve thoús | and none." | IV. i. 171.

See also II. ii. 41, II. ii. 109, II. iii. 168, II. iii. 29, III. ii. 90, III. iv. 74, V. ii. 28, V. iii. 21, V. iii. 42, V. iii. 101, V. iv. 2.

Apparent Alexandrines resolved.

"The Lord' | Northumberland | his son' | young Hén | ry Percy." II. ii. 53.

Here there is no doubt that Northumberland, in accordance with Shakespeare's treatment of names, is intended to form one foot only and the *cy* of Percy is hypermetric.

"And as' | I am' | a gen'tle*man* | I cried' | it him'."

The word 'gentleman' may here be treated as a dissyllable, the last syllable of which is hypermetric.

9. *Peculiarities of Accent.* In some verses, examples of which are given below, apparent irregularities exist, because the word exhibiting it had a different accent from what it has at present,

This being allowed for, the irregularity is at once recognized as only apparent and not real.

"Until' | the heávens, | env'y | ing ear'th's | good háp." | I. i. 23.

"And for' | our eyés | do háte | the diré | aspéct." | I. iii. 127.

This is the usual pronunciation of aspect in Shakespeare as will be seen in I. iii. 209.

"He shórt | ens foúr | years of' | my soúl' | s exilé." | I. iii. 217.

"Making' | the har'd | way sw'eet | and dé | lectáb*le.*" | II. iii. 7.

"If th'y | offen' | ces wére | upón | recórd." | IV. i. 230.

So "advérse," I. iii. 82; "sepúlchre," I. iii. 196; "pérspectives," II. ii. 18; "súperfluous," III. iv. 64.

10. *Rhyme.* Concerning the occasional occurrence of rhyme in Shakespeare's plays Dr. Abbott remarks: "Rhyme was often used as an effective termination to a scene. When the scenery was not changed or the arrangements were so primitive that the change was not easily perceptible, it was perhaps additionally desirable to mark that the scene was finished. Rhyme was also used in the same convenient way to mark an *aside* which otherwise the audience might have great difficulty in recognizing an aside."

To mark the end of a Scene.

"Go to Flint castle: there I'll pine away;
A king, woe's slave, shall kingly woe obey.

. . . . . .

Discharge my followers: let them hence away,
From Richard's night to Bolingbroke's fair day."
III. ii. 209-219.

To mark the end of a speech.

"High-stomach'd are they both, and full of ire,
In rage deaf as the sea, hasty as fire."
I. i. 18-19.

VIII. Some Peculiarities of Shakespearian English.

Elizabethan English, on a superficial view, appears to present this great point of difference from the English of modern times—that in the former any irregularities whatever, whether in the formation of words or in the combination of words into syllables, are allowable. In the first place, almost any part of speech can be used as any other part of speech. An adverb can be used as a verb, "They askance their eyes"; as a noun, "the backward and abysm of time"; as an adjective, "a seldom pleasure." Any noun, adjective, or neuter verb can be used as an active

verb. You can "happy" your friend, "malice" or "fool" your enemy, or "fall" an axe on his neck. An adjective can be used as an adverb; and you can feel and act "easy," "free," "excellent"; or as a noun, and you can talk of "fair" instead of "beauty," and a "pale" instead of a "paleness." Even the pronouns are not exempt from these metamorphoses. A "he" is used for a man, and a lady is described by a gentleman as "the fairest she he has yet beheld."

In the second place, every variety of apparent grammatical inaccuracy meets us. *He* for *him*, *him* for *he*; *spoke* and *took* for *spoken* and *taken*; plural nominatives with singular verbs, relatives omitted where they are now considered necessary; unnecessary antecedents inserted; *shall* for *will*, *should* for *would*, *would* for *wish*; *to* omitted after "I ought," inserted after "I durst"; double negatives, double comparatives (more better, etc.), and superlatives; *such* followed by *which*, *that* by *as*; *as* used for *as if*; *that* for *as that*; and lastly, some verbs with apparently two nouns, and others without any nominative at all. —Abbott, *Shakesperian Grammar*.

I. Nouns.

Plural where we use singular.

"Whither you will, so I were from your *sights*." IV. i. 315.

When an abstract noun as above refers to several persons it was the custom amongst Elizabethan writers to use the plural form as here.

"Say when, where, and how,
"Cam'st thou by *this* ill *tidings*? speak, thou wretch."
III. iv. 79-80.

So *news*, III. iv. 82, and *odds*, III. iv. 89.

Singular where we use plural.

"And everything is left at *six and seven*." II. ii. 122.

Abstract for concrete.

"Cousin, farewell; what *presence* must not know,
From where you do remain let paper show." I. iii. 249.

So *slander*, I. i. 113; *receipt*, I. i. 126; *ransom*, II. i. 56; *conduct*, IV. i. 157; *fear*, V. vi. 31.

Nouns used as adjectives.

"Such *neighbour* nearness to our sacred blood." I. i. 119.

So *traitor*, I. i. 102; *companion*, I. ii. 55; *infant*, I. iii. 133; *December*, I. iii. 298; *venom*, II. i. 19; *vassal*, III. iii. 89; *subject*, IV. i. 126; *sunshine*, IV. i. 221; *triumph*, V. ii. 66.

Verb used as noun.

"Doth more solicit me than your *exclaims*." I. ii. 2.

Although it is very common in Shakespeare to find a noun used as a verb, it is uncommon to find a verb used as a noun as here.

II. Adjectives.

Adjective used as adverb. *Right* (=rightly), I. i. 46; *all* (=quite), I. iii. 205; orderly, I. iii. 9; *grievous* (=grievously), I. iv. 54; *new* (=newly), II. i. 31; *heavy* (=heavily), II. ii. 30; *big* (=boastingly), III. ii. 114; *double* (=doubly), III. ii. 117, etc.

Compound adjectives. These are exceedingly common in Shakespeare's writings, the doublets often being alliterative which gives them an even greater force.

Time-honour'd, I. i. 1; high-stomach'd, I. i. 18; soon-believing, I. i. 101; ten-times-barr'd up, I. i. 180; out-dared, I. i. 190; daring-hardy, I. i. 43; eagle-wing'd, I. iii. 129; sky-aspiring, I. iii. 130; rival-hating, I. iii. 131; harsh-resounding, I. iii. 135, etc., etc.

Adjectives out of place.

"Divides are thing *entire* to many objects." II. ii. 17.

"*Welcome* you are." II. iii. 170.

"*Glad* am I." III. ii. 104.

"That in a Christian climate souls *refined*
Should show so heinous black obscene a deed." IV. i. 130-1.

Possessive adjective transposed.

"*Dear my* liege." I. i. 184.

Observe the French idiom as well as inversion in *letters patents*, II. i. 202; formerly many Romance adjectives were inflected in this fashion.

Double superlative. No good example in *Richard II.*

Double comparative.

"The envoy of *less happier* times." II. i. 49.

This is a very peculiar expression:

"Thy waste is no whit *baser* than thy land." II. i. 103.
Also II. i. 95 and III. iii. 137.

Adjective used as noun.

"And let them die that age and *sullens* have." II. i. 139.

Also *good*, I. ii. 57 and I. iii. 300; *worse*, I. iii. 301; *last*, II. i. 1; *happy*, V. iii. 94.

"*Un*" *used as adjectival suffix in place of* "*in.*"

"Should run thy head from thy *unreverent* shoulders." II. i. 123.

"Is all *unpossible.*" II. ii. 126.

Concerning this very common substitute of *in* for *un* and *vice versâ*, Abbot says, "We appear to have no definite rule of distinction even now, since we use *ungrateful*, *ingratitude*; *unequal*, *inequality*. *Un* seems to have been preferred by Shakespeare before *p* and *r*, which do not allow *in* to precede, except in the form *im*. *In* seems also to have been retained in many cases from the Latin, as in the case of *ingratus*, *importunium*, etc. As a general rule we now use *in* where we desire to make the negative a part of the word and *un* where the separation is maintained—untrue, infirm; hence *un* is always used with participles—untamed, etc. Perhaps also *un* is stronger than *in*."

The = by that = ablative of old demonstrative "thaet."

"Woe doth *the* heavier sit." I. iv. 279.

III. Articles.

Definite article omitted.

"Ah, Richard, with the eyes of heavy mind." II. iv. 18.

"So longest way shall have the longest moans." V. i. 90.

Indefinite article omitted.

"If ever I were traitor." I. iii. 201.

"In war was never lion rag'd so fierce." II. i. 173.

"It is such crimson tempest should bedrench." III. iii. 46.

IV. Adverbs.

Double negatives. The Old English custom in respect to negatives was to make the one intensify or emphasise the other. The Latin custom is that the one annihilates the other, as in *nonnunquam*, *not never* = *sometimes*. The Latin custom did not come into our language until after the middle of the seventeenth century. The English custom is seen in Matt. xxii. 46: "Ne nân ne dorste nân thing âcsian" (No one durst ask him anything); and in Chaucer's *Prologue*, 70-71, where he says of the Knight:

> "He never yit no vileinye ne sayde,
> In al his lyf, unto no maner wight."

In each of these sentences there are four negatives.—Meiklejohn.

"*Nor never* look upon each other's face." I. iii. 185.

"Vex not yourself, *nor* strive *not* with your breath." II. i. 3.

"*Nor no* man's lord." IV. i. 255.

"*Nor* shall *not* be the last." V. v. 25.

"Where *no* man *never* comes but that sad dog." V. v. 70.

Also I. iii. 185 and I. iii. 188.

The old genitive case of nouns and pronouns used as adverbs.

"*Needs* must I like it well." III. ii. 4.

Compare also backwards and sideways.

Adverbs with the prefix "a," which signifies some preposition, such as "in," "on," "of," "at."

"Show nothing but confusion, eyed *awry*." II. ii. 19.

But = only.

"Stays *but* the summons of the appellant's trumpet." I. iii. 3.

Adverb used as adjective.

"The anointing king is *hence*." II. iii. 96.

Ellipse of adverbial inflection.

"The Duke of Norfolk, sprightfully and *bold*." I. iii. 2.

This is very common; the *ly* is understood from the preceding word and so serves for the seeming adjective, which it converts into a true adverb.

V. Pronouns.

"*Thou*" *used for* "*thee*."

"Make me, that nothing have, with nothing grieved,
And *thou* with all pleased, that hast all achieved."
IV. i. 216-7.

Personal pronoun used as a reflexive. This is a common Elizabethan idiom, and was due to the fact that reflexive pronouns were innovations that had not yet asserted themselves sufficiently to exclude personal pronouns from being used reflexively as had been the case previously.

"Then thus I turn *me* from my country's light." I. iii. 176.

Cp. II. i. 147 (*him = himself*), II. ii. 106 (*thee = thyself*), II. iii. 161 (*you = yourself*), III. iii. 83 (*them = themselves*).

Relative omitted.

"Why have you not proclaimed Northumberland,
And all the rest [that are] revolted faction traitors?"
II. ii. 57.

"I hate the murderer, love him (who is) murdered." V. v. 40.

Cp. I. i. 50, II. ii. 128, III. iii. 169, IV. i. 256, IV. i. 334, V. iv. 2, in all of which the omitted relative is in the nominative case.

Also I. ii. 1, II. ii. 145, II. iii. 73, III. ii. 94, III. ii. 211, III. iv. 101, IV. i. 198, where the omitted relative is in the objective case.

"*Which*" *used for* "*who*" *and* "*that*."

"Now for the rebels *which* stand out in Ireland." I. iv. 38.

"Kerns *which* live like venom." II. i. 157.

"Beshrew me, cousin, *which* didst lead me forth." III. ii. 205.

"And wilt thou, pupil-like,
Take thy correction mildly, kiss the rod,
And fawn on rage with base humility,
Which art a lion and a king of beasts?" V. i. 31-4.

Redundant object. Instead of saying "I know what you are," in which the object of the verb "I know" is the clause "what you are," Shakespeare frequently introduces, before the dependent clause, another object, so as to make the dependent clause a mere explanation of the object.—Abbott.

"March on and mark *King Richard* how he looks." III. iii. 61.

"Didst thou not mark the *King*, what words he spake?" V. iv. 1.

"*What*" *as a relative.* What being simply the neuter of the interrogative who, ought consistently to be similarly used. As, therefore, *who* is used relatively, we may expect *what* to be used likewise. And so it is; but, inasmuch as the adjective *which* very early took the force of the relative pronoun, *what* was supplanted by *which*, and is rarely used relatively. Even when it is thus used, it generally stands before its antecedent, thereby indicating its interrogative force, though the position of the verb is altered to suit a statement instead of a question.—Abbott.

"*What* our contempt doth often hurl from us
We wish *it* ours again."

"Look *what* I speak my life shall prove *it* true." I. i. 87.

"*The which*" *used, with repetition of the antecedent.*

"Eight hundred nobles,
In name of *lendings* for your highness' *soldiers*,
The which (nobles) he hath detained for lewd employment." I. i. 90.

That=which thing.

"And, *that* is worse,
The Lord Northumberland, his son, young Harry Percy,
With all their powerful friends, are fled to him." II. ii. 55.

Which=as to which.

"Showers of blood,
The which how far off from the mind of Bolingbroke,
It is such crimson tempest should bedew." III. iii. 45.

"With unrestrained loose companions—
Even such, they say, as stand in narrow lanes,
And beat our watch, and rob our passengers;
Which he, young, wanton and effeminate boy,
Takes on the point of honour to support
So dissolute a crew." V. iii. 10.

"As" used as a relative.

"I cannot but be sad, so heavy-sad
As . . . makes me faint." II. ii. 31.

which means "I feel such sadness *as*."

VI. Verbs.

"In general distinction of inflections which prevailed during the Elizabethan period, *en* was particularly discarded. It was therefore dropped in the conversion of nouns and adjectives into verbs, except in some cases where it was peculiarly necessary to distinguish a noun or adjective from a verb. . . . Hence it may be said that any noun or adjective should be converted into a verb by the Elizabethan author."

Nouns as verbs.

"Grace me no grace, nor *uncle* me no uncle." II. iii. 87.

"*Imp* out our drooping country's broken wing." II. i. 292.

"And *cloister* thee in some religious house." V. i. 23.

"Let me *unkiss* the oath 'twixt thee and me." V. i. 74.

"Who sitting in the stocks *refuge* their shame." V. v. 26.

"Then am I *king'd* again; and by and by
Think that I am *unking'd* by Bolingbroke." V. v. 36-7.

Also *to safeguard*, I. ii. 35; *piece*, V. i. 92; *joy*, V. iii. 95.

Intransitive used transitively.

"Which false hope *lingers* in extremity." II. ii. 72.

Here *lingers*=*lengthens out*.

"Let not to-morrow, then, *ensue* to-day." II. i. 197.

"That he, our hope, might have *retired* his power." II. ii. 46.

"For why the senseless brands will *sympathise*
The heavy accent of thy moving tongue." V. i. 46-7.

"Oh how it *yearn'd* my heart when I beheld." V. v. 76.

Also *atone*, I. i. 202; *remember*=remind, I. iii. 269; *stay*, II. i. 289; *part*, III. i. 31; *scoffing*, III. ii. 163; *fall*, III. iv. 104.

Transitive used intransitively.

"The love of wicked men *converts* to fear." V. i. 66.

"For there, they say, he daily doth *frequent*." V. iii. 6.

"Disorder, horror, fear and mutiny
Shall here *inhabit*." IV. i. 141-2.

Is for has (*common with verbs of motion*).

"The king *is* come." II. i. 69.

"I hope the king *is* not yet *shipp'd*." II. ii. 42.

"Is safe arrived," II. ii. 50; "Are fled to him," V. ii. 56; "Are gone and fled," III. ii. 73; also V. iii. 82; III. ii. 73; IV. i. 89, etc., etc.

Impersonal verbs.

"Me rather had my heart might feel your love." III. iii. 142.

Dr. Abbott (sect. 230) says: "In Chaucer and earlier writers, preference is expressed, not by our modern 'I had, or would, rather' (=sooner), but by (To) me (it) were liefer (German *lieber*), that is, more pleasant." These two idioms are confused in this passage. *Me* is a dative, as in *Methinks*, *meseems*, etc.

Singular verb with plural nominative.

"What *is* six winters?" I. iii. 261.
"*Reproach and dissolution hangeth* over him." II. i. 258.
"How near the *tidings* of our comfort *is*." II. i. 272.
"Twenty *shadows*, which *shows* like grief itself." II. ii. 15.
Also "oath and duty bids." II. ii. 112.
"Conscience and kindred *bids*." II. ii. 115.
"Hills and ways *draws*." II. iii. 4.
"*Is* Bushy, Green, and Wiltshire dead?" III. ii. 141.
"There *lies* two kinsmen." III. iii. 169.
"Sorrow and grief *makes*." III. iii. 184.

Plural verb with singular nominative.

"What *store* of parting tears *were* shed." I. iv. 5.

Verbs of motion omitted.

"Will I hence." I. iii. 73.
"I towards the north." V. i. 76.
"I will with the king." V. ii. 84.
Also I. ii. 56; II. i. 296; III. ii. 217; V. i. 37; V. iii. 16, etc., etc.

May=can.

"For I *may* never lift
An angry arm against His minister." I. ii. 40.
"I *may* not shew it." V. ii. 70.
"He is as like thee as a man *may* be." V. ii. 108.

Shall for will and should for would.

"To be a make-peace *shall* become my age." I. i. 160.
"And all too soon, I fear, the king *shall* rue." I. iii. 205.
"By this the weary lords
Shall make their way seem short." II. iii. 17.
"How his son's son *should* destroy his sons." II. i. 105.
"If thou *wouldst*,
There *shouldst* thou find one heinous article." IV. i. 232.

Formation of participles.

Owing to the tendency to drop the inflection *en*, Elizabethan authors frequently used the curtailed forms of the past participle, which are common in Early English, when, however, the form thus curtailed was in danger of being confused with the infinitive as in 'taken,' they used the past tense for the past participle.

(*a*) *Curtailed past participle.*

"What I have *spoke*, or thou canst worse divine." I. i. 77.
"*Writ* in remembrance more than things long past." II. i. 14.
"Hath *broke* his staff." II. ii. 59.
"My lord, I had *forgot* to tell your lordship." II. ii. 93.
"No, my good lord: he hath *forsook* the court. II. iii. 25.
"Had you first died, and he been thus *trod* down." II. iii. 126.
"That when the searching eye of heaven is *hid*." III. ii. 37.
"For you have but *mistook* me all this while." III. ii. 174.
"Your children yet unborn and *unbegot*." III. iii. 88.

Also *shook*, IV. i. 163; *holp*, V. v. 62; *bestrid*, V. v. 79; *eat*, V. v. 85.

(*b*) "*a*" *before present participle.*

"Thou, now a-dying, say'st thou flatterest me." II. i. 90.

Future for subjunctive.

"Will ye permit that I *shall* stand condemn'd." II. iii. 119.

Infinitive used as noun.

"Except like curs *to tear* us all to pieces." II. v. 139.

Abbott says that *to tear* is a noun governed by *except*.

Infinitive used indefinitely.

"I was too strict *to make* mine own away." I. iii. 244.

To make = in making.

"But I shall grieve you to report the rest."

To report = by reporting.

"I do beseech your grace
To have some conference with your grace alone."

To have = about having.

Subjunctive used optatively.

"*Hold out*, my horse, and I will first be there." II. i. 300.

Ed = *able.*

"And *unavoided* (= able) is the danger now." II. ii. 268.

VII. Prepositions.

On=of.

"By thinking *on* the frosty Caucasus?" I. iii. 295.

On=in.

"As, though *on* thinking *on* no thought I think.' II. ii. 31.

"*On* what condition stands it?" II. iii. 107.

By=to come near to, attain.

"How cam'st thou *by* these ill tidings?" III. iv. 80.

By=as a consequence.

"Fear'd *by* their breed and famous *by* their birth." II. i. 52.

For=as for, as regards.

"But *for* our trusty brother-in-law and the abbott." V. iii. 137.

In=in the case of. Abbott remarks we say "in my own person" or "by inquiry," not

"Which *in myself* I boldly will defend." I. i. 145.

So "But I bethink me what a weary way
In Ross and Willoughby . . . will be found."

i.e. "in the case of Ross," equivalent to "by Ross."

Of=as regards, about.

"Enquire *of* him." III. ii. 186.

To=for.

"I have a king here *to* my flatterer." IV. i. 308.

Upon=in consequence of.

"Thy son is banished *upon* good advice." I. iii. 233.

With=on.

"I live *with* bread like you." III. ii. 175.

With=at.

"My inward soul
With nothing trembles; at some thing it grieves,
More than *with* parting from the lord the king." II. ii. 12-3.

Withal, the emphatic form of 'with,' is used for *with* after the object at the end of a sentence. In the following example it means besides.

"Adding *withal.*" IV. i. 18.

Without=outside.

"What seal is that that hangs *without* thy bosom." V. i. 56.

Preposition omitted after verbs of motion (a common idiom).

"Since presently your souls must part your bodies." III. i. 3.

"Therefore we banish you our territories." I. iii. 139.

Preposition omitted before the thing heard after verbs of hearing.

"He that no more must say is listened more." II. i. 9.

Preposition transposed.

"The pleasure that some fathers feed *upon*." II. i. 79.

"It stands your grace *upon* to do him right." II. iii. 138.

VIII. Conjunctions.

And = and that too.

"And shall the figure of God's majesty,

. . . . . .

Be judged by subject and inferior breath,
And he himself not present." IV. i. 129.

An. According to Abbott this conjunction, meaning 'if,' is simply a form of 'and,' and the supposition being expressed by the subjunctive that follows 'an' and not by 'an' itself. The addition of 'if' to the 'an' he attributes to the same desire for heaping on the meaning as gave rise to double comparatives, double superlatives, and double negatives.

"*An if* I were thy nurse, thy tongue to teach." V. iii. 113.

'*As*' *apparently, but not really = as if.* (The 'if' is really implied in the subjunctive as in the case of 'an.')

"As gentle and as jocund *as* (if I were going) to jest,
Go I to fight." I. iii. 95.

As = namely.

"No; it is stopped with other plotting sounds,
As praises of his state." II. i. 18.

'*But*' *signifying prevention.*

"I doubt not but to ride as fast as York." II. v. 2.

which means "I have no doubt (*i.e.* fear) about being prevented from riding."

'*So,*' *with the future or subjunctive = provided that.*

"Poor queen! *so that* thy state may be no worse,
I would my skill were subject to thy curse." III. iv. 102.

So as = so that.

"*So* as thou livest in peace, die free from strife." V. v. 57.

Where = whereas,

"*Where* fearing dying pays death servile breath." III. ii. 185.

For because, a tautologous combination.

"And *for because* the world is populous."

Cf. *an if, but only, or ere*, V. v. 3.

IX. Figures of Speech.

I. Figures of Resemblance.

1. *Simile* (Latin, *similis*, like) is a comparison between two things, and expresses in direct language a similarity of relation between them. The words commonly used to introduce this figure are *as* and *like*.

"Like a false traitor and injurious villain." I. i. 91.

"Like a traitor coward
Sluic'd out his innocent soul." I. i. 103.

"Strong as a tower in hope I cry amen." I. iii. 102.

2. *Metaphor* (Gk. *meta*, change; *pherein*, to carry) is a figure of substitution, and not of mere comparison, as is the simile; one thing is put for, or said to be, another. It is a simile with the words *as* and *like* omitted.

"*The caterpillars* of the Commonwealth,
Which I have sword to weed and cut away." II. iii. 166.

"*This ague fit* of fear is over-*blown*." III. ii. 190.

The above are examples of mixed metaphor, since we do not weed caterpillars nor do fits blow over.

"The searching *eye of heaven* (the sun)." III. ii. 37.

"To whose *flint bosom* my condemned lord." V. i. 3.

3. *Personification* (Latin, *persona* = a mask, a person) is a figure in which lifeless things are spoken of as persons.

"*Obedience* bids I should not bid again." I. i. 163.

"Teaching stern *murder* how to butcher thee." I. ii. 32.

"Let *Heaven* revenge." I. ii. 40.

"*Truth* hath a quiet breast." I. iii. 96.

The following list of personified inanimate objects and abstract ideas are amongst the many instances of this figure of speech occurring in *Richard II.*

Destinies, I. ii. 15; *envy*, I. ii. 21; *nature*, II. i. 43; *war*, II. i. 44; *time*, II. i. 195; *necessity*, V. i. 21.

4. *Apostrophe* (Gk. *apo*, aside; *strepho*, I turn) is a figure in which a person or thing is addressed. The speaker arrests the normal progress of the recital, and 'turns aside' to call, more or less passionately, upon some person or thing connected directly or indirectly with the things or events referred to in the main speech. When an inanimate object is so apostrophized, personification as well as apostrophe is made use of.

"And as I truly fight, *defend me heaven*." I. iii. 25.

"Swellest thou, *proud heart*?" III. iii. 140.

"Mount, mount *my soul*!" V. v. 111.

"Forgiveness, *horse*! why do I rail on thee?" V. v. 90.

5. *Allegory = sustained metaphor.*

"So is it in the music of men's lives.
And here have I the daintiness of ear
To check time broke in a disorder'd string;
But for the concord of my state and time
Had not an ear to hear my true time broke.
I wasted time, and now doth time waste me;
For now hath time made me his numbering clock;
My thoughts are minutes; and with sighs they jar
Their watches on unto mine eyes, the outward watch,
Whereto my finger, like a dial's point,
Is pointing still, in cleansing them from tears.
Now sir, the sound that tells what hour it is
Are clamorous groans, which strike upon my heart,
Which is the bell: so sighs and tears and groans
Show minutes, times, and hours: but my time
Runs posting on in Bolingbroke's proud joy,
While I stand fooling here, his Jack o' the clock.
V. v. 44-60.

6. *Euphemism* (Gk. *eu*, well; *phemi*, I speak) is a figure by which an offensive idea is softened down and stated in an inoffensive or, belike, laudatory form.

"O, good! convey? *conveyers* are you all." IV. i. 317.

This is an ironical euphemism for thieves.

"Until the heavens, envying earth's good hap,
Add an immortal title to your crown." V. i. 68.

A euphemism for "until you die."

7. *Hyperbole* (Gk. *hyper*, beyond; *ballo*, I throw) is a figure of exaggeration, things being represented as greater than they are. Hence hyperbole is only another name for exaggerated statement. This figure is well exemplified in the wooing and cursing scenes. In the former it is the flattering and the latter the discrediting exaggeration that is employed.

"Ere my tongue
Shall wound my honour with such feeble wrong,
Or sound so base a parle, my teeth shall tear
The slavish motive of recanting fear." I. i. 190-3.

"Within my mouth you have engaol'd my tongue,
Doubly portcullis'd with my teeth and lips."
I. iii. 166-7.

"And in the sentence my own life destroy'd." I. iii. 242.

II. Figures of Contrast.

8. *Antithesis* (Gk. *anti*, against; *tithemi*, I place) is a figure in which words or sentences are placed in direct contrast. The following are illustrations of this figure taken from *Richard II.*:

"The *accuser* and the *accused* freely speak." I. i. 17.

"Since the *more fair* the crystal in the sky,
The *uglier* seem the clouds that in it fly." I. i. 42-3.

"Upon his *bad* life to make all this *good*." I. i. 99.

"Things *sweet* to taste prove to digestion *sour*." I. iii. 236.

"Small showers last *long*, but sudden storms are *short*." II. i. 34.

"And my *large kingdom* for a *little grave*." III. iii. 153.

9. *Epigram*=a pointed and pithy saying.

"Numbering sands and drinking oceans dry." II ii. 146.

"I wasted time, and now doth time waste me." V. v. 49.

"Pride must have a fall." V. v. 88.

III. Figures of Association.

10. *Metonomy* (Gk. *meta*, change; *onoma*, a name) is a figure which substitutes the name of one thing for the name of another with which it is connected.

"Farewell *my blood*." I. iii. 57.

'Blood'=Bolingbroke, who is a blood relation of the king.

"Such is the *breath* of kings." I. iii. 215.

It is not the breath but the power of the king expressed in words that is meant.

"Truth hath a quiet *breast* (=heart)." I. iii. 96.

11. *Hypallage* (Gk. *hypo*, under; *allage*, change) is a figure in which an attribute is transferred from its proper subject to others that are closely connected with them.

"Now by my *sceptre's awe*." I. i. 118.

'Awe' does not belong to the sceptre, but to the king who wields it.

"To take advantage of the *absent time*." II. iii. 79.

It is not time but the king who is absent.

"He is in the *mighty hold* of Bolingbroke." III. iv. 83.

It is Bolingbroke who is mighty, and not the hold.

X. Alliteration.

Alliteration is the frequent recurrence of the same sound consequent upon the recurrence of the same letter, generally initial, as in the well-known "*A*pt *a*lliteration's *a*rtful *a*id." This elementary device for tickling the ear was prior to rhyme, with which it agrees in so far as it consists in sameness of sound, the difference being that in rhyme the sameness is not that merely of single letters but of syllables, nor does it occur at the beginnings, but at the ends of lines. Shakespeare's alliterations are usually double-barrelled, but sometimes three or more words

are alliterative. It may be desirable to remind the student that in the hands of a master, such as Shakespeare, Chaucer, or Tennyson, alliteration is capable of producing a pleasing, and even a beautiful effect.

"*A*ppellant to this *p*rincely *p*resence." I. i. 34.
"The *k*indred of the *k*ing." I. i. 70.
"My *l*oving *l*ord, I take my *l*eave of you." I. iii. 63.
"*V*irtue and *v*alour." I. iii. 98.

So "sly slow hours," I. iii. 150; "sullen sorrow," I. iii. 227; "happy havens," I. iii. 276; "ripest fruit first falls," II. i. 153; "thy last long leave," V. i. 35, etc., etc.

XI. Examples of paraphrasing.

"All places that the eye of heaven visits.

. . . . . .

The man that mocks at it and sets it light."

I. iii. 275-293.

"A safe retreat and even a happy refuge will be found by the philosophic soul where'er the genial beams of the sun gladden the earth, wherefore I counsel thee to regard forceful compulsion as in itself a good. Imagine that thou thyself dost turn thy back on the King, and not that he doth bid thee go, since sorrow suffered impatiently doth thereby sting the more. Say that at my behest thou goest forth in search of glory and renown, and nurture not the thought that thou hast been outlawed by the King. Persuade thyself that of thine own free will thou seekest in a heathen clime exemption from a pestilential plague raging at home. Picture to thyself that what thy soul desires most lies whither thou goest and not in the place whence thou art newly come. In the grass beneath thy exiled feet see the rush-strewn floor of the presence chamber, and regard thy onward passage as but the stately measure of the dance, the sweet flowers being to thy eyes the fair ladies of the court, since heart-eating grief bites less the more thou laugh'st its power to scorn."

"Think I am dead and that even here thou takest

. . . . . .

For the deposing of a rightful king." V. i. 38-50.

"Esteem me dead and let this parting be as from a breath-bereft corpse. And when in evening gloom of wintry days the pitying farm-folk seated round the blazing logs bend their ears to list to mournful tales of days long gone, then tell to them the piteous tale of Richard's hapless fate and they shall seek their couches with tear-dimmed eyes: nay, e'en the lifeless brands upon the hearth will melt with fire-quenching tears, and some in ashy white and some in mournful black will bewail the sad undoing of a crowned king."

XII. Example of analysis.

"All places that the eye of heaven visits

. . . . . .

But thou the king." I. iii. 275-280.

Sentence.	Link.	Kind.	Subject.	Enlargement of Subject.	Predicate.	Object.		Enlargement of Object.	Extension.
						Direct.	Indirect.		
I. All places are to a wise man ports and happy havens		Principal	places	all	are ports and happy havens		to a man	wise and happy	
II. That the eye of heaven visits . .	that	Sub. adjective to I.	eye	of heaven	visits	that			
III. Teach thy necessity to reason thus		Principal	(you)		teach	necessity	to reason thus	thy	
IV. There is no virtue like necessity . .		Principal	virtue	no, like(to) necessity	is there				
V. Think not . . .		Principal	(thou)		think				not
VI. The king did banish thee		Sub. noun to V.	king	the	did banish	thee			
VII. But (think) . . .	but	Principal	(thou)		(think)				
VIII. That thou did'st banish the king .	that	Sub. noun to VII.	thou		didst banish	king		the	

HISTORICAL SKETCH.

1397-1398.

a Recriminatory quarrel between the newly-created dukes of Hereford and Norfolk. The quarrel referred by the Permanent Committee to settlement by single combat at Coventry. The combat forbidden by the King; Hereford banished for ten years, Norfolk for life.

1399.

b Death of John of Gaunt, seizure of his estates by the King with the sanction of the Permanent Committee. Departure of the King for Ireland to avenge the defeat and death of Edmund Earl of March, and return of Hereford from France, owing to the influence of Archbishop Arundel, for the recovery of his estates.

c Landing of Hereford (Henry of Lancaster) at Ravenspur, July 4; Henry joined by Earls of Northumberland (Percy) and Westmoreland (Neville) and Edmund Duke of York, the regent, at Berkeley Castle. March upon Cheshire. Dispersal of the King's forces commanded by the Earl of Salisbury (John de Montacute). Capture of Bristol by Henry. July 29.

d Landing of the King at Milford Haven, July 25, to find himself deserted. Submission of the King to Henry at Flint. The King brought to London. Sept. 2.

e Parliament summoned by the King to meet upon Sept. 30. Resignation of the crown (Sept. 29) presented to Parliament on its meeting. The resignation accepted, and articles of accusation presented against Richard complaining of

i. His unjust conduct to Henry of Lancaster, Archbishop Arundel, and the Duke of Gloucester.

ii. His breaches of the Constitution, tampering with the judges (1387), and appeal to the Pope (1398).

iii. His illegal taxation, especially the extortion of money from seventeen counties for pardons (1399), non-payment of loans, and alienation of crown lands.

iv. His claim to the absolute right of legislation.

Sentence of deposition pronounced. Sept. 30.

GENEALOGICAL TABLE.

Edward III.

- Edward, the Black Prince, d. **1376**.
  - Richard II., deposed **1399**.
- Lionel, Duke of Clarence, d. **1368**.
  - Philippa = Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March.
    - Roger, Earl of March (declared heir to the throne **1386**). d. **1398**.
      - Edmund, Earl of March, d. **1424**.
      - Anne = Richard of Cambridge.
- Blanche, daughter of Henry, Duke of Lancaster. = John d. **1399**. = Katharine Swinford.
  - Henry IV.
  - The Beauforts.
- Edmund, Duke of York. d. **1402**.
  - Anne = Richard of Cambridge.

HISTORICAL NOTES ON PERSONS MENTIONED IN *RICHARD II.*

Abbot of Westminster = William of Colchester (1386-1420). Holinshed, followed by Shakespeare, gives 1399 instead of 1420 as the year of his death.

Aumerle, Duke of = Earl of Rutland, son of Duke of York, whom he succeeded. Killed at Agincourt, 1415.

Berkeley, Earl = Thomas, 5th Baron of Berkeley in Gloucestershire.

Bagot = Sir William Bagot, who was Sheriff of the County of Leicester in 1378 and 1380.

Bolingbroke = Henry, Duke of Hereford (1366-1413), eldest son of John of Gaunt. Born at Bolingbroke in Leicestershire. Reigned as Henry IV. (1399-1413).

Bushy = Sir John Bushy, who, in 1399, was Speaker of the House of Commons.

Carlisle = Thomas Meeks, Bishop of Carlisle (1397). Imprisoned in Tower for high treason (1400) for short time. Was formerly a Westminster monk.

Fitzwater = 5th Baron Fitzwalter (1368-1407).

Gaunt, John o' = 4th son of Edward III. Born at Ghent, hence name (1340-1399).

Green = Sir Henry Green, son of Justice of King's Bench to Edward III., of same name.

Langley, Edmund of, Duke of York, 5th son of Edward III. (1341-1402).

Marshal, Lord = Thomas Holland, deputy to Mowbray, Duke of Norfolk.

Mowbray, Thomas = Duke of Norfolk, who was made Earl Marshal (1386), Governor of Calais (1397), when Duke of Gloucester, his prisoner, died or was murdered. Made Duke of Norfolk same year. Died in 1400 at Venice.

Northumberland, Earl of = Henry Percy. Sided with Bolingbroke at first, but afterwards rebelled against him. Killed at battle of Bramham Moor (Yorkshire), 1408.

Percy, Henry = son of above (1366-1403). Sided at first with Bolingbroke, but afterwards rebelled. Killed at battle of Shrewsbury, 1403.

Richard II. (Bordeaux). Born at Bordeaux 1366. King 1366-1399. Son of Black Prince, and grandson of Edward III.

Ross, Lord = William de Ros of Hamlake, Treasurer to Henry IV. Died 1414.

Salisbury, Earl of = John Montacute, 3rd Earl Salisbury. Beheaded 1400.

Surrey, Duke of = Thomas Holland, Earl of Kent, who in 1399 was made Duke of Surrey. Beheaded with Salisbury in 1400.

Willoughby = William, 5th Lord d'Eresby. Married Duchess of York. Died 1409.

HISTORICAL ANACHRONISMS AND INACCURACIES.

> "And I will turn thy falsehood to thy heart,
> Where it was forged, with my rapier's point."
>
> IV. i. 39.

The rapier, a long pointed sword, was not known in England until long after the reign of Richard II. In Balleines' Dialogue between Sovonene and Chiruagi (1579), the "long foining rapier" is spoken of as "a new kynd of instrument." Shakespeare was always indifferent to anachronisms of this kind. For example, in *Titus and Andronicus* he arms Demetrius with a rapier.

It is also objected that Shakespeare speaks of Gaunt, who was but 58, as "Gaunt in being old," of the Queen, who was a child of ten, as though she were a woman, and of Aumerle as though he were the son of the then Duchess of York, whereas he was the son of a former marriage. Concerning the age of Norfolk, who could not have been 40 at the time of his banishment, when he spoke of "the language I have learned these 40 years," and also as to the date of the death of the Duchess of Gloucester, which took place in 1399, and not immediately after the return of Bolingbroke from banishment, there is also some inaccuracy, whether accidental or intentional cannot now be ascertained; but it is possible (1) that Gaunt was really decrepit, as life was much shorter in Shakespeare's time than now; (2) that Norfolk, aged a little more than 30, spoke approximately; and (3) that Shakespeare purposely regarded Queen Isabel as a woman for the purpose of dramatic effect, since the sayings and doings of a child wife could not be of any interest, whereas the queen of the play is a feeling, sensible, and brave woman.

GLOSSARY.

abet (II. iii. 146), encourage; O.F. *abeter*, incite.

abundant (V. iii. 66), overflow; L. *abundare*.

achieve (II. i. 254), accomplish; O.F. *achever* from *venir à chef*, to come to one's object.

along (I. iii. 199), long way; O.E. *and*, against; *lang*, long.

amazing (I. iii. 81), bewildering; *a*, intensive; *maze*, labyrinth.

antic (III. ii. 162), mimic; L. *antiquus*, old.

appeach (V. ii. 79), impeach; L.L. *impedicare*, to fetter.

apricocks (III. iv. 29). F. *abricot*; Port. *albricoque*.

atone (I. i. 202), bring to unity, ; A.S. *æt*, at; *an*, one.

attainder (IV. i. 24), accurate; O.F. *ateindre*, to condemn.

attorney (II. iii. 134), representative; O.F. *atorner*, to arrange.

aught (II. iii. 73), anything; A.S. *ân*, one; *wiht*, thing.

barbed (III. iii. 117), accoutred; F. *barde*, horse armour.

bedrench (III. iii. 46), soak; A.S. *be* and *drencan*, to drench.

bereft (II. i. 237), deprived; A.S. *bireáfian*.

beshrew (III. ii. 204), curse (mild); Ety. doubtful.

betid (V. i. 42), O.E. *be* or *bi* and *tiden*.

bias (III. iv. 5), inclination; F. *biais*, incline.

boon (IV. i. 302), favour; F. *bon*, good.

boot (I. i. 164), advantage; A.S. *bôt*.

brook (III. ii. 2), endure; A.S. *brucan*, use, enjoy.

caitiff (I. ii. 53), captive and so miserable; L. *captus*.

carouse (II. i. 127), feast; G. *gar aus*, completely out.

caterpillar. M.E. *catyrpil*, from O.F. *chattepeleuse*.

choler (I. i. 153), wrath; Gr. *chole*, bile.

chopping (V. iii. 124), changing; M.E. *choppen*, cut.

cloister (V. i. 23). O.F. *cloistre*; L. *claustrum*.

cloy (I. iii. 296), glut; O.F. *cloyer*, to shut up.

control (I. iii. 90), *contre-roll*, and from O.F. *contre-rolle*, a duplicate register to control original.

counterfeit (I. iv. 14), pretend; F. *contrefaire*.

cozen (II. ii. 69), cheat; F. *cousiner*, to claim relationship for bad end.

craft (I. iv. 13), skill; A.S. *craeft*, power.

cunning (I. iii. 163), skilful; A.S. *cunnan*, to know.

curb (I. i. 54), to restrain; F. *courber*, bend.

deck (I. iv. 62), cover; G. *decken*, to cover.

distaff (III. ii. 118), spinning staff; L.G. *diesse*, flax; A.S. *staef*, staff.

eager (I. i. 48), sharp; F. *aigre*; L. *acer*, sharp.

ear (III. ii. 112), plough; A.S. *erian*, to plough.

exchequer (II. iii. 65), treasury; O.F. *eschequier*, chess board so called from chequered table-cloth used in Court of Exchequer.

fare (II. i. 71), to go; A.S. *faran*, to go.

fealty (V. ii. 45), loyalty; O.F. *feaulté*.

fell (I. ii. 46), cruel; A.S. *fel*, fierce, to be distinguished from

fell (III. i. 23), to cut down; A.S. *fellan*, to cause to fall.

fellow (III. ii. 99), equal; Icel. *félagi*, partner.

fiend IV. i. 270), demon, enemy; A.S. *feond*; cf. G. *feind*, enemy.

foil (I. iii. 265), gold or silver leaf at back of gem to throw it up; L. *folium*, leaf.

fond (V. i. 101), foolish; M.E. *fonnen*, to act foolishly.

forfend (IV. i. 129), avert; hybrid E. *for*; L. *defendere*, defend.

forgo (I. iii. 361), for thoroughly and go.

foster (I. iii. 126), to nourish; A.S. *fostor*, nourishment, from *fôda*, food.

foul (I. i. 44), unclean; A.S. *fûl*.

fretted (III. iii. 167), eat away; A.S. *for-etan*.

gait (III. ii. 15), mode of walking; Ic. *gata*, path.

gaoler (I. iii. 169), prison keeper; O.F. *gaiole*, from L.L. *gabiola*, a cage.

glose (II. i. 10), flatter; Gr. *glossa*, the tongue.

gnarling (I. iii. 292), snarling (onomatopoetic word).

gore (I. iii. 60), pierce; M.E. *gare*, *gor*, *gar*, spear.

hallowmas (V. I. 80), All Saints' Day; A.S. *halig*; L.L. *missa*, mass.

headlong (V. i. 65). O.E. *heedlinge*.

heinous (IV. i. 131), wicked; F. *haine*, hatred.

homage (II. i. 204), fealty; L.L. *homaticum*.

impeach (I. i. 170), accuse; O.F. *empescher*, hinder.

imp out (II. i. 292), graft; A.S. *impan*.

impress (III. i. 25), device; L. *imprimere*, to impress.

incontinent (V. vi. 48), fickle; L. *in*, not, and *contineo*, restrain.

jade (III. iii. 179), hag; Ic. *jalda*, mare.

jauncing (V. v. 94), overworking horse; O.F. *jancer*.

journeyman (I. iii. 274), day worker; F. *journée*, an entire day.

just (V. ii. 52), joust or tournament; O.F. *jouste*.

kern (II. i. 156), light-armed Irish soldier; Ir. *cearn*, a man.

knave (II. ii. 96), boy or servant; O.S. *cnape*, boy; G. *Knabe*, boy.

largess (I. iv. 44), bounty; F. *largess*, from L. *largitio*, bestowal.

lief (V. ii. 49), soon; A.S. *leof*, dear.

liege (I. i. 7), sovereign, but should = faithful; O.F. *lige*, loyal.

livery (II. i. 204), bestowal of fief upon heir; F. *livrée*.

lourg (I. iii. 187), gloomy; M.E. *loeren*, to frown.

manor (IV. i. 212), estate; O.F. *manoir*.

miscreant (I. i. 39), vile wretch, literally an unbeliever; O.F. *mescreant*, unbelieving.

moe (I. i. 239), more in number; A.S. *ma*, more; more = greater is from A.S. *mara*, greater.

needs (II. iii. 153), of necessity; A.S. *néd*, need.

noble (I. i. 88), coin of Edward III., 6s. 8d. in value; L. *nobilis*.

noblesse (IV. i. 119), nobleness; F. *noblesse* (cf. noblesse oblige).

noisome (III. iv. 38), noxious; M.E. *noy*, hurt, as in annoy and E. *suffix*, some.

odds (I. i. 62), excess or difference (see note).

pagan (IV. i. 95), heathen; L. *paganus*.

pageant (IV. i. 321), show; L.L. *pagina*, platform.

pale (III. iv. 40), staked enclosure; L. *palus*, stake.

palmer (III. iii. 151), pilgrim; L. *palma*, palm tree, such as pilgrims brought from the Holy Land.

parasite (II. ii. 70), hanger on; F. *parasite*, from L. *parasitus*, eater at table of another.

peer (I. iii. 93), equal; L. *par*, equal.

pelting (II. i. 60), mean; cf. paltry.

pilled (II. i. 246), pillaged; F. *piller*.

portcullis (I. iii. 167), grating-gate to fortress; O.F. *porte couleice*.

postern (V. v. 17), literally back gate; L. *post*, after.

purchase (I. iii. 282), acquire; O.F. *purchacer*, to pursue eagerly and so obtain.

recreant (I. i. 144), cowardly, renegade; L. *re*, again; *credo*, I believe.

rheum (I. iv. 8), tears; Gr. *rheo*, I flow.

ruth (III. iv. 106), pity; M.E. *reuthe*.

sheer (V. iii. 61), literally clear, pure; Ic. *skaerr*, bright.

shrewd (III. ii. 59), spiteful, like a shrew; A.S. *screáwa*.

signories (III. i. 22), lands belonging to signor; It. *signor*, lord.

sterling (IV. i. 264), a full value; A.S. *easter* and *ling* = Hanseatic Germans, the first money-changers in England.

sullens (II. i. 139), fits of temper; O.F. *solain*, alone.

supplant (II. i. 156), place underfoot; L. *sub*, under; *planta*, sole.

tender (I. i. 32), holding dear; F. *tendre*, tender.

tidings (II. i. 272), news; Ic. *tithindi*, news.

trade (III. iii. 156), resort; A.S. *treden*, to tread, which accords with the original meaning of the word.

trespass (I. i. 138), wrong doing; O.F. *trespasses*, to pass across, *i.e.* the boundary between right and wrong.

trow (II. i. 218), think; A.S. *treowian*, trust.

twain (I. i. 50), two; A.S. *twegan*.

utterance (II. iii. 125), act of speaking; A. *utian*, to send out.

vial (I. ii. 12), phial; L. *phiala*.

viol (I. iii. 162), musical instrument, violin; L. *vitula*, violin.

wallow (I. iii. 298), roll (in mud): A.S. *wealwian*.

wanton (I. iii. 214), playful, vicious; A.S. *wan*, lacking, and *togen*, drawn or educated.

warder (I. iii. 118), staff of office held by the king as chief of the tournament; A.S. *weard*, guard.

wayward (II. i. 142), capricious; A.S. *onweg*, away, and the suffix *ward*.

whit (II. i. 103), think; A.S. *wiht*.

wistly (V. iv. 7), wistfully; M.E. *wisly*, surely.

wont (V. v. 99), habitual; A.S. *wunian*, to dwell.

yearn (V. v. 76), to become uneasy through desire; A.S. *geornan*, desire.

GLASGOW: PRINTED AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS BY ROBERT MACLEHOSE AND CO. LTD.

MACMILLAN'S ENGLISH CLASSICS.

The following Volumes, Globe 8vo. are ready or in preparation.

ADDISON—Selections from the Spectator. By K. Deighton. 2s. 6d.
ADDISON and STEELE—Coverley Papers from the Spectator. By K. Deighton. 1s. 9d.
ARNOLD Selections from Poems. By G. C. Macaulay. 2s. 6d.
AYTOUN'S LAYS—By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 6d.
BACON—Essays. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 3s.
——Selections from Bacon's Essays. By R. O. Platt. 6d.
——The Advancement of Learning. By F. G. Selby, M.A. Book I., 2s. Book II., 4s. 6d.
——The New Atlantis. By A. T. Flux. Sewed, 1s.
BOSWELL—Journal of a Tour to the Hebrides. Edited by H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 2s. 6d.
BUNYAN—Pilgrim's Progress. By John Morrison, M.A. 1s. 9d.; sewed, 1s. 6d.
BURKE—Reflections on the French Revolution. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 5s.
——Speech on American Taxation; Speech on Conciliation with America; Letter to the Sheriffs of Bristol. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 3s. 6d.
——Thoughts on the Cause of the Present Discontents. By F. G. Selby, M.A. 2s. 6d.
BYRON—Childe Harold. By Edward E. Morris, M.A. Cantos I. and II., 1s. 9d.; Cantos III. and IV., 1s. 9d.
CAMPBELL—Selections. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s.
CHAUCER—Selections from Canterbury Tales. By H. Corson. 4s. 6d.
——The Squire's Tale. With Introduction and Notes. By A. W. Pollard, M.A. 1s. 6d.
——The Prologue. With Introduction and Notes. By the same. 2s. 6d.
——The Knight's Tale. With Introduction and Notes. By the same. 2s. 6d.
CHOSEN ENGLISH—Selections from Wordsworth, Byron, Shelley, Lamb, and Scott. With short Biographies and Notes by A. Ellis, B.A. 2s. 6d.
COWPER—The Task. Books IV. and V. By W. T. Webb, M.A. Sewed, 1s. each.
——The Task. Book V. Sewed, 6d.
——Selections from Letters. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——Shorter Poems. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s. 6d.
DRYDEN—Select Satires—Absalom and Achitophel; The Medal; Mac Flecknoe. By J. Churton Collins, M.A. 1s. 9d.
——The Hind and the Panther. Edited by Prof. W. H. Williams, University of Tasmania. 2s. 6d.
ENGLISH POETRY—From Blake to Arnold. (1783-1853.) With Introduction and Notes. By C. J. Brennan, M.A. Edited by J. P. Pickburn and J. le Gay Brereton. 2s. 6d.
GOLDSMITH—The Traveller and The Deserted Village. By Arthur Barrett, B.A. 1s. 9d. The Traveller and The Deserted Village, separately, 1s. each, sewed.
——The Traveller and The Deserted Village. By Prof. J. W. Hales. 6d.
——Vicar of Wakefield. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 2s. 6d.
GRAY—Poems. By John Bradshaw, LL.D. 1s. 9d.
——Ode on Spring and The Bard. Sewed, 6d.
——Elegy in a Country Churchyard. Sewed, 6d.
HELPS—Essays Written in the Intervals of Business. By F. J. Rowe M.A. and W. T. Webb, M.A. 1s. 9d.
HOLMES—The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table. By John Downie, M.A. 2s. 6d.
JOHNSON—Life of Milton. By K. Deighton. 1s. 9d.
——Life of Dryden. By P. Peterson. 2s. 6d.
——Life of Pope. By P. Peterson. 2s. 6d.
LAMB—The Essays of Elia. First Series. By N. L. Hallward, M.A., and S C. Hill, B.A. 3s.; sewed, 2s. 6d. Second Series, 3s.
——Tales from Shakespeare. By C. D. Punchard, B.A. 1s. 6d.
LONGFELLOW—Courtship of Miles Standish. By W. Elliot, M.A. 1s.
——The Song of Hiawatha. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 1s. 6d.
——Evangeline. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 1s. 9d.
MACAULAY—Lays of Ancient Rome. Edited by W. T. Webb, M.A. 1s. 9d
——Horatius, separately, 6d.
——Essay on Addison. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——Essay on Warren Hastings. By K. Deighton. 2s. 6d.
——Essay on Lord Clive. By K. Deighton. 2s.
——Essay on Boswell's Life of Johnson. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——Essay on William Pitt, Earl of Chatham. By R. F. Winch, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——Essay on Milton. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——Essay on Frederic the Great. By A. T. Flux. 1s. 9d.
——Essay on Samuel Johnson. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A.
MALORY—Morte D'Arthur. By A. T. Martin, M.A. 2s. 6d.

MILTON—PARADISE LOST. Books I. and II. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 1s. 9d. Books I.-IV., separately, 1s. 3d. each; sewed, 1s. each.
——L'ALLEGRO, IL PENSEROSO, LYCIDAS, ARCADES, SONNETS, &c. By W. Bell, M.A. 1s. 9d.
——COMUS. By W. Bell, M.A. 1s. 3d.; sewed, 1s.
——LYCIDAS. By the same. Sewed, 6d.
——SAMSON AGONISTES. By H. M. Percival, M.A. 2s.
——TRACTATE OF EDUCATION. By E. E. Morris, M.A. 1s. 9d.
——LYCIDAS AND COMUS. By W. Bell, M.A. 1s. 6d.
——THE SHORTER POEMS. With Introduction and Notes. By A. J. George, M.A. 3s. 6d.
PALGRAVE—GOLDEN TREASURY OF SONGS AND LYRICS. Book I. By J. H. Fowler, M.A. 2s. 6d. Book II. By W. Bell, M.A. 2s. 6d. Book III. By J. H. Fowler. 2s. 6d. Book IV. Edited by J. H. Fowler. 2s. 6d. Notes to Books I. to IV.
POEMS OF ENGLAND. A Selection of English Patriotic Poetry, with notes by Hereford B. George, M.A., and Arthur Sidgwick, M.A. 2s. 6d.
POPE—ESSAY ON MAN. Epistles I.-IV. By E. E. Morris, M.A. 1s. 3d.; sewed, 1s. Epistle I., sewed, 6d.
——ESSAY ON MAN. Epistle I. Sewed, 6d.
——ESSAY ON CRITICISM. By J. C. Collins, M.A. 1s. 9d.
SCOTT—THE LADY OF THE LAKE. By G. H. Stuart, M.A 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. Canto I., sewed, 9d.
——THE LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL. By G. H. Stuart, M.A., and E. H. Elliot, B.A. 2s. Canto I., sewed, 9d. Cantos I.-III. and IV.-VI., separately, 1s. 3d. each; sewed, 1s. each.
——MARMION. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 3s.; sewed, 2s. 6d. Canto VI. separately, 1s.
——ROKEBY. By the same. 3s.; sewed, 2s. 6d.
——THE LORD OF THE ISLES. By H. B. Cotterill, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——QUENTIN DURWARD. With Introduction and Notes. 2s. 6d.
——KENILWORTH. With Introduction and Notes. 2s. 6d.
SHAKESPEARE—Plays edited by K. Deighton.—THE TEMPEST, 1s. 9d. MUCH ADO ABOUT NOTHING, 2s. A MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM, 1s. 9d. THE MERCHANT OF VENICE, 1s. 9d. AS YOU LIKE IT, 1s. 9d. TWELFTH NIGHT, 1s. 9d. THE WINTER'S TALE, 2s. KING JOHN, 1s. 9d. RICHARD II., 1s. 9d. HENRY IV., Part I., 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. HENRY IV., Part II., 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. HENRY V., 1s. 9d. HENRY VIII., 1s. 9d. CORIOLANUS, 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. ROMEO AND JULIET, 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. JULIUS CÆSAR, 1s. 9d. MACBETH, 1s. 9d. HAMLET, 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. KING LEAR, 1s. 9d. OTHELLO, 2s. ANTONY AND CLEOPATRA, 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s. CYMBELINE, 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s.
——RICHARD III., by C. H. Tawney, M.A. 2s. 6d.; sewed, 2s.
SOUTHEY—LIFE OF NELSON. By Michael Macmillan, B.A. 3s.
SPENSER—THE FAERIE QUEENE. Book I. By H. M. Percival, M.A. 3s.
——THE SHEPHEARD'S CALENDAR. By C. H. Herford, Litt.D. 2s. 6d.
STEELE—SELECTIONS. By L. E. Steele, M.A. 2s.
TENNYSON—SELECTIONS. By F. J. Rowe, M.A., and W. T. Webb, M.A. 3s. 6d. Also in two parts, 2s. 6d. each. Part I. Recollections of the Arabian Nights, The Lady of Shalott, The Lotos-Eaters, Dora, Ulysses, Tithonus, The Lord of Burleigh, The Brook, Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington, The Revenge.—Part II. Œnone, The Palace of Art, A Dream of Fair Women, Morte D'Arthur, Sir Galahad, The Voyage, Demeter and Persephone.
——THE LOTOS-EATERS, ULYSSES, ODE ON THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON, MAUD. COMING OF ARTHUR AND PASSING OF ARTHUR. By the same. 2s. 6d.
——COMING AND PASSING OF ARTHUR, DREAM OF FAIR WOMEN. THE LOTOS-EATERS, ULYSSES, ODE ON THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON, THE REVENGE. By the same. 3s. 6d.
——MORTE D'ARTHUR. By the same, sewed 1s.
——THE COMING OF ARTHUR; THE PASSING OF ARTHUR. By F. J. Rowe, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——ENOCH ARDEN. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——AYLMER'S FIELD. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——THE PRINCESS. By Percy M. Wallace, M.A. 3s. 6d.
——GARETH AND LYNETTE. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——GERAINT AND ENID; THE MARRIAGE OF GERAINT. By the same. 2s 6d
——THE HOLY GRAIL. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——LANCELOT AND ELAINE. By F. J. Rowe, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——GUINEVERE. By G. C. Macaulay, M.A. 2s. 6d.
——SELECT POEMS OF TENNYSON. By H. B. GEORGE and W. H. HADOW 2s. 6d.
——THE CUP. By H. B. COTTERILL, M.A. 2s. 6d.
THACKERAY—ESMOND. With Introductions and Notes. 2s. 6d.
WORDSWORTH—SELECTIONS. By W. T. Webb, M.A. 2s. 6d.: also in two parts, 1s. 9d. each.